MATHEMATICAL ANALYSIS OF A MEAN FIELD MODEL OF ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPHIC ACTIVITY IN THE NEOCORTEX

A Dissertation Presented to
The Academic Faculty

by

Farshad Shirani

In Partial Fulfillment of
The Requirements for the Degree of
Doctor of Philosophy in
The School of Aerospace Engineering

Georgia Institute of Technology

May, 2018

MATHEMATICAL ANALYSIS OF A MEAN FIELD MODEL OF ELECTROENCEPHALOGRAPHIC ACTIVITY IN THE NEOCORTEX

Approved by:

Professor Wassim M. Haddad, Chairman
and Advisor
School of Aerospace Engineering
Georgia Institute of Technology

Professor Rafael de la Llave, Advisor
School of Mathematics
Georgia Institute of Technology

Professor John-Paul B Clarke
School of Aerospace Engineering
Georgia Institute of Technology

Professor Dewey H. Hodges
School of Aerospace Engineering
Georgia Institute of Technology

Professor Andrzej Święch
School of Mathematics
Georgia Institute of Technology

Date Approved: March 26, 2018

هیچ می‌دانی چرا، چون موج

در گریز از خویشتن، پیوسته می‌کاهم؟

زان که بر این پرده تاریک

این خاموشی نزدیک

آنچه می‌خواهم نمی‌بینم

و آنچه می‌بینم نمی‌خواهم

دکتر محمدرضا شفیعی کدکنی

Do you know why I—like a wave [in the ocean]—

constantly wane while escaping myself?

Because on this dark horizon, on this imminent silence,

I don't see what I want,

I don't want what I see . . .

—*M. R. Shafiei Kadkani*[1]

---

[1] M. R. Shafiei Kadkani is a Distinguished Professor of Persian Literature at the University of Tehran. The poem is translated from Persian.

To my parents,
for their love, support, and sacrifices,

and

to Professor Parviz Jabehdar Maralani
for developing an educational program,
and maintaining an academic environment of high standards
in which many students in Iran, including myself, could learn and thrive

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Completing a doctoral thesis in mathematical neuroscience within a school of aerospace engineering was challenging. However, this achievement was made possible by the help and support of many professors and friends, to whom I would like to express my great gratitude.

To the greatest extent, this thesis was possible due to the invaluable guidance I received form Professor Rafael de la Llave, a true advisor and mentor I have been honored to work with. With his great humility, he spent a lot of time discussing mathematical problems with a naive student such as myself who had a background in engineering and knew very little of mathematics. His presence in my doctoral research gave me all the confidence I needed to tackle some of the mathematical problems investigated in this thesis, which looked too intimidating to me to approach at the beginning. His extraordinary depth and breadth of knowledge has always fascinated me, and his eagerness and passion to learn and discuss science has genuinely inspired me. His totally unconditional help and support towards his students' success is truly exceptional. The generosity, gentleness, and compassion I saw in him will be kept in my mind, and in my heart.

Over the duration of my PhD study at Georgia Tech, my financial support as a graduate research assistant was entirely secured by Professor Wassim M. Haddad, despite the fact that I had chosen to work on a problem which was away from his line of research. For this, I remain greatly thankful to him.

I am especially grateful to Professor Andrzej Święch for joining my doctoral committee, taking the time to read my dissertation, and providing me with helpful suggestions. I learned a great level of mathematical rigor by taking several courses with him. I had the chance to have a few meetings with him to discuss my research, in which he gave me the entire idea that I used to prove one of the propositions in this thesis. Taking courses and discussing mathematics with a fascinating scholar and mathematician such as him was a great pleasure.

I would like to thank Professor Dewey H. Hodges and Professor John-Paul B Clarke who accepted to join my doctoral committee and helped me with their useful comments and suggestions to improve this dissertation.

I acquired the mathematical knowledge I needed for completion of this thesis by taking many graduate courses offered in the School of Mathematics. At the same time, I learned a lot of teaching techniques through the exemplary teaching style of the amazing professors in the School of Mathematics. In addition to Professor de la Llave and Professor Swiech, I would like to sincerely thank Professor Plamen Iliev, Professor Vladimir I. Koltchinskii, Professor Michael Loss, Professor Mohammad Ghomi, Professor Yingjie Liu, Professor Xu-Yan Chen, Professor Shahaf Nitzan, and Professor Chongchun Zeng .

I am deeply thankful to my lab-mates, Tanmay, Xu, and Teymur, and my friends, Masoud, Azad, Farinaz, Ali, Bahman, Alireza, Hamed, Mahdi, Hanif, Amirhossein, Hassan, Matthew, Homayoun, Kaivalya, Pablo, Wei, Razi, Ashkan, Mehregan, Daniel, and Shams. The delightful time I spent with them, and their friendly support, helped me overcome the frustration of a PhD life far away from home.

I am indebted to my advisors, professors, friends, and all the staff at home in Iran—the School of Electrical and Computer Engineering at the University of Tehran—where my entire academic personality was formed. The memories of those wonderful thirteen years I spent with them are still alive in my mind, and will never die. I would like to specifically thank Professor Parviz Jabehdar Maralani, Professor Babak Nadjar Araabi, Professor Mohammad Javad Yazadanpanah, Professor Majid Nili Ahmadabadi, Professor Shahrokh Farhangi, Professor Mahmoud Shahabadi, and Professor Ahmad Feiz Dizaji.

Last, but foremost, I express my deepest sense of gratitude to my parents for their constant love and support. They have sacrificed a lot of their desires, happiness, and comfort to bring me up to this stage in my life. Neither this doctoral thesis, nor any other achievements in my life, could by any means be possible without their care and support. My education has always been extremely important for my parents, and I dedicate this thesis to them, with my deepest love and gratitude.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

LIST OF TABLES

LIST OF FIGURES

SUMMARY

Electroencephalographic recordings from the scalp provide essential measures of mesoscopic electrical activity in the neocortex. The rhythmic patterns of variations observed in the electroencephalogram result from the dynamic activity that occurs, possibly heterogeneously, in a wide area of the neocortex. Such spatio-temporal electrical activity can be effectively modeled using mean field theory.

The mesoscopic model of the electroencephalographic activity in the neocortex developed by Liley, Cadusch, and Dafilis [Network, 13 (2002), pp. 67–113] is a mean field model that has been widely used in the literature to study different patterns of rhythmic activity in conscious and unconscious states of the brain. This model is presented as a system of coupled ordinary and partial differential equations with periodic boundary conditions.

In this dissertation, a mathematical analysis of this mean field model is provided using infinite-dimensional dynamical systems theory and the theory of partial differential equations. Specifically, existence, uniqueness, and regularity of weak and strong solutions of the model are established in appropriate function spaces, and the associated initial-boundary value problems are proved to be well-posed. Moreover, sufficient conditions are developed for the phase spaces of the model to ensure non-negativity of certain quantities, as required by their biophysical interpretation.

To analyze the global dynamics of the model, semidynamical system frameworks are established and the semigroups of weak and strong solution operators are proved to possess bounded absorbing sets for the entire range of biophysical values of the parameters of the model. Moreover, challenges involved in establishing a global attractor for the model are discussed, and in particular, it is shown that there exist sets of parameter values for which the constructed semidynamical systems do not possess a global attractor due to the lack of the compactness property.

To demonstrate an application of this model to problems of computational neuroscience, the emergence of rhythmic activity in the neocortex is studied using bifurcation theory. The results predicted by the bifurcation analysis are verified by numerically solving the equations of the model using COMSOL Multiphysics®.

Finally, using the analytical and computational results developed in this dissertation, instructive insights are provided into the complexity of the behavior of the model, and suggestions are made for future research.

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

Inspired by the seminal work of Alan Hodgkin and Andrew Huxley on modeling the flow of ionic currents through the membrane of a giant nerve fiber, numerous biophysical and mathematical models have been developed towards understanding the neurophysiology of the central nervous system and the underlying mechanism of the various phenomena that emerge during its vital operation in the body, many of which still remain a mystery to researchers [1, 2, 3, 4]. In particular, in exploring the core component of the central nervous system—the brain—substantial effort has been devoted to developing models at different levels of scope, from the *molecular and intercellular* level, dealing with the transportation of ions and the enzymatic kinetics of neurotransmitter-receptor binding at ion channels, to the *single cell and intracellular* level, dealing with the creation and transmission of action potential, to the *population and neuronal network* level, dealing with the average behavior and synchronized activity of neuronal ensembles, to the *system* level, dealing with the systematic operation and interaction between cortical and subcortical components of the brain, and finally, to the *behavioral and cognitive* level, dealing with the integrated mental activity and the creation of mind [5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12].

As an effective methodology for developing models at the population and network level, mean field theory has been employed to construct approximate models for interconnected populations of neurons by averaging the effect of all other neurons on a given individual neuron inside a population. The resulting *averaged neuron* can be used to analyze the overall temporal behavior of a single population of neurons—leading to a *neural mass* model—or can be considered as a locally averaged component of a continuum of neural populations—leading to a spatio-temporal *mean field* model. These models are particularly useful in analyzing the electrophysiological activity of neuronal ensembles using local field potentials and electroencephalograms (EEGs) [13, 14, 15, 16].

The evolution equations that describe a mean field model of neural activity in the cortex are in the form of a system of partial differential equations (PDEs), or a system of coupled ordinary and partial differential equations. The theory of infinite-dimensional dynamical systems is hence used to analyze the global dynamics and longterm behavior of these systems. The classical approach to this problem follows several steps. First, existence, uniqueness, and regularity of solutions are established for all positive time in appropriately chosen problem-dependent function spaces, and the well-posedness of the problem is confirmed. Second, a semidynamical system framework is constructed over a positively invariant complete metric space—the phase space for the evolution of the solutions—and is shown to possess bounded absorbing sets. Asymptotic compactness of the semigroup of solution operators is then ensured to guarantee the existence of a global attractor, which is a compact strictly invariant attracting set containing all the information regarding the asymptotic behavior of the model. Third, the Hausdorff or fractal dimension of the global attractor is estimated to show that the attractor is finite-dimensional, so that the asymptotic dynamics of the system is determined by a finite number of degrees of freedom. Fourth, the existence of an inertial manifold is established, which is a smooth finite-dimensional invariant manifold containing the global attractor. Consequently, the dynamics on the attractor can be presented by a finite set of ordinary differential equations (ODEs) and further characterized to give the overall picture of the longterm behavior of the system [17, 18, 19, 20, 21].

In this dissertation, we investigate the mean field model proposed in [22] for an understanding of the electrical activity in the neocortex as observed in the EEG. This model, which is comprised of a system of coupled ordinary and partial differential equations in a two-dimensional space, has been widely used in the literature to study the alpha- and gamma-band rhythmic activity in the cortex [23, 24], phase transition and burst suppression in cortical neurons during general anesthesia [25, 26, 27], the effect of anesthetic drugs on the EEG [28, 29], and epileptic seizures [30, 31, 32, 33]. Open-source tools for numerical implementation of the model and computation of equilibria and time-periodic solutions are developed in [34]. Complexity of the dynamics of the model, including periodic and pseudo-periodic solutions, chaotic behavior, multistability, and bifurcation are studied in [35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41].

The above results, however, are mainly computational or use approximate versions of the model. A rigorous analysis of the dynamics of the model in an infinite-dimensional dynamical system framework as outlined above is not available in the literature. In particular, the basic problems of well-posedness of the initial-boundary value problem associated with the model and regularity of the solutions remain uninvestigated. It is not known under what conditions, if any, the components of the solutions of the model that are associated with nonnegative biophysical quantities remain nonnegative for all time. The solutions that take negative values for such quantities—even for a small interval of time in the distant future—cannot represent a biophysically plausible dynamics of the electrical activity in the neocortex.

The aim of this dissertation is to study the global dynamics of the mean field model discussed above, to ensure its biophysical plausibility, and to provide the basic analytical results required for characterization of the longterm dynamics of the model. Specifically, we follow the first two steps of the classical analysis approach to investigate the problem of existence or nonexistence of a global attractor.

This dissertation is organized as follows. In Chapter 2, we introduce notation and recall key definitions that are necessary for developing the results. In Chapter 3, we give a description of the anatomical structure of the neocortex and the physiological interactions that underlie the construction of the model. Moreover, we present the mathematical structure of the model as a system of coupled ordinary and partial differential equations with initial values and periodic boundary conditions. In Chapter 4, following the first step of the classical analysis approach, we prove the existence and uniqueness of weak and strong solutions for the proposed initial value problem and analyze the regularity of these solutions.

As in the second step of the classical analysis approach, in Chapter 5 we define semigroups of weak and strong solution operators and show their continuity properties. Moreover, we establish sufficient conditions on the phase spaces as to ensure biophysical plausibility of the evolution of the solutions under the associated semidynamical systems. In Chapter 6, we show that the semigroups of solution operators possess bounded absorbing sets for all possible values of the biophysical parameters of the model. In Chapter 7, we discuss challenges involved in establishing a global attractor for the model, and in particular, we show that there exist sets of values for the biophysical parameters of the model such that the associated semigroups of solution operators do not possess a compact global attractor. In Chapter 8 we consider an application of the model in studying rhythmic oscillations in the electrical activity in the brain. We conclude the dissertation in Chapter 9 with a discussion on the results developed in the dissertation and their application to computational analysis of the model.

CHAPTER 2

NOTATION AND PRELIMINARIES

The notation used in this dissertation is fairly standard. Specifically, $\mathbb{R}^n$ denotes the n-dimensional real Euclidean space and $\mathbb{R}^{m\times n}$ denotes the space of real $m \times n$ matrices. A point $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is presented by the n-tuple $x = (x_1, \ldots, x_n)$ or, when it appears in matrix operations, by the column vector $x = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & \cdots & x_n \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}}$, where $(\cdot)^{\mathrm{T}}$ denotes transpose. The nonnegative cone $\{x \in \mathbb{R}^n : x_j \geq 0 \text{ for } j = 1, \ldots, n\}$ is denoted by $\mathbb{R}^n_+$. A sequence of points in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is denoted by $\left\{x^{(l)}\right\}_{l=1}^{\infty}$, with the jth component of $x^{(l)}$ denoted by $x^{(l)}_j$. Moreover, the trace of a square matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n\times n}$ is denoted by $\operatorname{tr} A$, and a block-diagonal matrix D with k blocks $D_1, \ldots, D_k$ is denoted by $\operatorname{diag}(D_1, \ldots, D_k)$. For $x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$, we write $x \geq y$ to denote component-wise inequality, that is, $x_j \geq y_j$, $j = 1, \ldots, n$. For $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{n\times n}$, we write $A \geq B$ to denote that $A - B$ is positive semidefinite. Finally, we denote by $0_{n\times n}$ and $I_{n\times n}$ the zero and identity matrices in $\mathbb{R}^{n\times n}$, respectively. We write I for the identity operator in other vector spaces.

For an inner product space $\mathcal{U}$, we denote the associated inner product by $(\cdot,\cdot)_{\mathcal{U}}$ and the norm generated by the inner product by $\|\cdot\|_{\mathcal{U}}$. For a Hilbert space $\mathcal{U}$, we denote the pairing of $\mathcal{U}$ with its dual space $\mathcal{U}^*$ by $\langle\cdot,\cdot\rangle_{\mathcal{U}}$. In particular, for $\mathcal{U} = \mathbb{R}^n$, we write $(\cdot,\cdot)_{\mathbb{R}^n}$ and $\|\cdot\|_{\mathbb{R}^n}$ for the standard inner product and the Euclidean norm, respectively. Similarly, for $\mathcal{U} = \mathbb{R}^{m\times n}$, we write $(\cdot,\cdot)_{\mathbb{R}^{m\times n}}$ for the standard inner product and $\|\cdot\|_{\mathbb{R}^{m\times n}}$ for the associated inner product norm. Moreover, we denote the vector 1-, 2-, and ∞-norms in $\mathbb{R}^n$ by $\|\cdot\|_1$, $\|\cdot\|_2 = \|\cdot\|_{\mathbb{R}^n}$, and $\|\cdot\|_\infty$, respectively. The matrix 1-, 2-, and ∞-norms in $\mathbb{R}^{m\times n}$ induced, respectively, by the vector 1-, 2-, and ∞-norms in $\mathbb{R}^n$ are denoted by $\|\cdot\|_1$, $\|\cdot\|_2$, and $\|\cdot\|_\infty$.

Let Ω be an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n$ denoting the *space* domain of a given dynamical system, with $x \in \Omega$ denoting a *spatial* point in Ω. The *time* domain of the system is given by the closed interval $[0, T] \subset \mathbb{R}$, $T > 0$, with the *temporal* point t. For a function $u : [0, T] \to \mathbb{R}$, the kth-order total derivative with respect to t at t_0 is denoted by $\mathrm{d}_t^k u(t_0)$. For $k = 1$, we write $\mathrm{d}_t u(t_0)$. For a function $u(x, t) : \Omega \times [0, T] \to \mathbb{R}$, the kth-order partial derivative with respect to t at (x_0, t_0) is denoted by $\partial_t^k u(x_0, t_0)$ and the kth-order partial derivative with respect to x_j at (x_0, t_0) is denoted by $\partial_{x_j}^k u(x_0, t_0)$, $j = 1, \ldots, n$. For $k = 1$, we write $\partial_t u(x_0, t_0)$ and $\partial_{x_j} u(x_0, t_0)$. The gradient of u in Ω is denoted by $\partial_x u$ and is given by $\partial_x u := (\partial_{x_1} u, \ldots, \partial_{x_n} u)$. The Laplacian of u in Ω is denoted by Δu and is given by $\Delta u := (\partial_{x_1}^2 + \cdots + \partial_{x_n}^2)$. For a vector-valued function $u(x, t) : \Omega \times [0, T] \to \mathbb{R}^m$, we interpret $u(x, t)$ as the m-tuple $u(x, t) = (u_1(x, t), \ldots, u_m(x, t))$, where each component $u_j(x, t)$, $j = 1, \ldots, m$, is a scalar-valued function on $\Omega \times [0, T]$. In this case, $\partial_x u(x, t) \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ is the gradient of u and the vector Laplacian Δu is given by $\Delta u(x, t) := (\Delta u_1(x, t), \ldots, \Delta u_m(x, t)) \in \mathbb{R}^m$, assuming Cartesian coordinates.

For every integer $k \geq 0$, the space of k-times continuously differentiable real-valued functions on Ω is denoted by $C^k(\Omega)$. The space $C^k(\overline{\Omega})$ consists of all functions in $C^k(\Omega)$ that, together with all of their partial derivatives up to the order k, are uniformly continuous in bounded subsets of Ω. Moreover, for $0 < \lambda \leq 1$, the Hölder space $C^{k,\lambda}(\overline{\Omega})$ is a subspace of $C^k(\overline{\Omega})$ consisting of functions whose partial derivatives of order k are Hölder continuous with exponent λ; see [42, sect. 1.18] for details. We use $C_{\mathrm{c}}^\infty(\Omega)$ to denote the space of infinitely differentiable real-valued functions with compact support in Ω. Moreover, we denote by $L_{\mathrm{loc}}^1(\Omega)$ the space of locally integrable real-valued functions on Ω. Then, for every function $u \in L_{\mathrm{loc}}^1(\Omega)$ and any multi-index α with $|\alpha| \geq 1$, the *weak partial derivative* of u in $L_{\mathrm{loc}}^1(\Omega)$, of order $|\alpha|$, is defined by the distribution u^α that satisfies

$$\int_\Omega u^\alpha \phi \,\mathrm{d}x = (-1)^{|\alpha|} \int_\Omega u \partial^\alpha \phi \,\mathrm{d}x \quad \text{for all } \phi \in C_{\mathrm{c}}^\infty(\Omega),$$

where $\mathrm{d}x = \mathrm{d}x_1 \cdots \mathrm{d}x_n$ is the Lebesgue measure on $\mathbb{R}^n$; see [42, sect. 6.3] for details. With a minor abuse of notation, we use ∂_t^k and ∂_x^k to denote the kth-order weak—as well as classical—partial derivatives with respect to t and x, respectively. The distinction will be clear from the context, or will otherwise be explicitly specified.

The Hilbert space of vector-valued Lebesgue measurable functions $u : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}^m$ with finite L^2-norm is denoted by $L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$, with the associated inner product and norm given by

$$(u, v)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} := \int_\Omega (u(x), v(x))_{\mathbb{R}^m} \,\mathrm{d}x, \quad \|u\|_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} := \left[\int_\Omega \|u(x)\|_{\mathbb{R}^m}^2 \,\mathrm{d}x\right]^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

The Banach space of vector-valued Lebesgue measurable functions $u : \Omega \to \mathbb{R}^m$ with finite L^∞-norm is denoted by $L^\infty(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$, with the norm

$$\|u\|_{L^\infty(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} := \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x\in\Omega} \|u(x)\|_\infty .$$

The Sobolev space of vector-valued functions $u \in L^p(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$, whose all lth-order weak derivatives $\partial_x^l u$, $l \le k$, exist and belong to $L^p(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^{m\times n^l})$, is denoted by $W^{k,p}(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$. When $p = 2$, the Sobolev spaces $W^{k,2}(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$ are Hilbert spaces for all $k \in [0, \infty)$, and are denoted by $H^k(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m) := W^{k,2}(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$. Specifically, $H^0(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m) = L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$, and $H^1(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m)$ is a Hilbert space with the inner product

$$(u, v)_{H^1(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} := (u, v)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} + (\partial_x u, \partial_x v)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n})} .$$

Moreover, $H^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)$ is a Hilbert space with the inner product

$$(u,v)_{H^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} := (u,v)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} + (\partial_x u, \partial_x v)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n})} + \left(\partial_x^2 u, \partial_x^2 v\right)_{L^2(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n^2})}.$$

Let $\Omega = (0,\omega_1)\times\cdots\times(0,\omega_n)$, $\omega_j > 0$, $j=1,\dots,n$, be an open rectangle in $\mathbb{R}^n$. A function $u:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$ is called Ω-*periodic* if it is periodic in each direction, that is,

$$u(x+\omega_j e_j) = u(x), \quad j=1,\dots,n, \quad x\in\mathbb{R}^n,$$

where e_j is the unit vector in the jth direction. Define the space $C^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega)$ as the restriction to Ω of the space of infinitely differentiable Ω-periodic functions. Then, the Sobolev space $H^k_{\text{per}}(\Omega)$, $k\ge 0$, is defined by the completion of $C^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega)$ in $H^k(\Omega)$; see [20, Def. 5.37] or, for an equivalent definition, [18, p. 50]. A vector-valued function $u:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}^m$ is Ω-periodic if each of its components $u_j:\mathbb{R}^n\to\mathbb{R}$, $j=1,\dots,m$, is Ω-periodic. The spaces $C^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)$ and $H^k_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)$ are then defined accordingly. It follows from Green's formula that

$$\begin{aligned}
(-\Delta u, v)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} &= (\partial_x u, \partial_x v)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n})}, \\
\big((-\Delta+I)u, v\big)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} &= (u,v)_{H^1_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)}, \\
\big(-\Delta u, (-\Delta+I)u\big)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} &= \|u\|^2_{H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} - \|u\|^2_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)}, \\
\|(-\Delta+I)u\|^2_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} &= \|u\|^2_{H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} + \|\partial_x u\|^2_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n})} \\
&= \|u\|^2_{H^1_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^m)} + \|\partial_x u\|^2_{H^1_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{m\times n})}.
\end{aligned} \tag{2.1}$$

In this dissertation, we interchangeably view the function $u(x,t)$, $x\in\Omega$, $t\in[0,T]$, as a composite function of x and t, as well as a mapping u of t to a function of x, that is,

$$[u(t)](x) := u(x,t), \quad x \in \Omega, \quad t \in [0,T].$$

With a minor abuse of notation, the same symbol is used to denote both the original form of the function and the mapping. The distinction becomes evident in the way we define the space of such mappings or, equivalently, Banach space-valued functions; see, for example, [43, App. E.5]. For a Banach space $\mathcal{U}$, the space $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{U})$ is composed of all strongly measurable Banach space-valued functions $u : [0,T] \to \mathcal{U}$ with the finite L^2-norm defined by

$$\|u\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{U})} := \left[\int_0^T \|u(t)\|_{\mathcal{U}}^2 \, \mathrm{d}t \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

The space $C^0([0,T];\mathcal{U})$ is composed of all continuous Banach space-valued functions $u : [0,T] \to \mathcal{U}$ with the finite uniform norm defined by

$$\|u\|_{C^0([0,T];\mathcal{U})} := \max_{t\in[0,T]} \|u(t)\|_{\mathcal{U}}.$$

Accordingly, the spaces $C^k([0,T];\mathcal{U})$ and $C^{k,\lambda}([0,T];\mathcal{U})$, $k \geq 0$, $0 < \lambda \leq 1$, are defined as the space of k-times continuously differentiable Banach space-valued functions and its Hölder-continuous subspace. The Sobolev spaces $H^k(0,T;\mathcal{U})$, $k \geq 0$, are composed of all functions $u \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{U})$, whose lth-order weak derivatives $\mathrm{d}_t^l u$ exist for $l \leq k$ and belong to $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{U})$. In particular, for $k = 1$, we have

$$\|u\|_{H^1(0,T;\mathcal{U})} := \left[\int_0^T \left(\|u(t)\|_{\mathcal{U}}^2 + \|\mathrm{d}_t u(t)\|_{\mathcal{U}}^2 \right) \, \mathrm{d}t \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

For further details on these spaces, see [43, sect. 5.9.2] and [20, sect. 7.1].

When $P : \mathcal{U} \to \mathcal{Y}$ is a mapping between the Banach spaces $\mathcal{U}$ and $\mathcal{Y}$, we denote the kth-order Fréchet derivative of P at u_0 by $\mathrm{d}_u P(u_0)$. The space $C^k(\mathcal{U};\mathcal{Y})$ is then composed of all k-times continuously differentiable mappings from $\mathcal{U}$ into $\mathcal{Y}$. For a mapping $P : \mathcal{U}_1 \times \cdots \times \mathcal{U}_m \to \mathcal{Y}$, where $\mathcal{Y}$ and $\mathcal{U}_j$, $j = 1, \ldots m$, are Banach spaces, $\partial_{u_j} P(u_0)$ is the jth partial Fréchet derivative of P at $u_0 = (u_{01}, \ldots, u_{0m})$. The gradient of P at u_0 is then written as $\partial_u P(u_0)$; see [42, sect. 7.1] for details.

Finally, we denote the symmetric difference of two sets $\mathscr{X}$ and $\mathscr{Y}$ by $\mathscr{X} \triangle \mathscr{Y}$. In a topological space $\mathcal{X}$, we denote the closure of a set $\mathscr{X} \subset \mathcal{X}$ by $\overline{\mathscr{X}}$, its interior by $\mathscr{X}^\circ$, and its boundary by $\partial \mathscr{X}$. The characteristic function of $\mathscr{X}$ is denoted by $\chi_{\mathscr{X}}$. When $\mathcal{X}$ is a measure space, $|\mathscr{X}|$ denotes the measure of the set $\mathscr{X} \subset \mathcal{X}$. For normed vector spaces $\mathcal{X}$ and $\mathcal{Y}$, we write $\mathcal{X} \hookrightarrow \mathcal{Y}$ for continuous embedding of $\mathcal{X}$ in $\mathcal{Y}$, and $\mathcal{X} \Subset \mathcal{Y}$ for compact embedding of $\mathcal{X}$ in $\mathcal{Y}$; see [42, sect. 6.6] for details. When $\mathcal{X}$ is a metric space and the topology on $\mathcal{X}$ is induced by the given metric, $B(x, R)$ denotes the open ball centered at $x \in \mathcal{X}$ with radius $R > 0$, which is a basis element for the topology. For every bounded measurable set in $\mathcal{X}$, and in particular for $B(x, R)$, we denote by $⨍_{B(x,R)}$ the averaging operator over $B(x, R)$, that is, $⨍_{B(x,R)} := \frac{1}{|B(x,R)|} \int_{B(x,R)}$.

CHAPTER 3

MODEL DESCRIPTION

The neocortex has a layered columnar structure consisting mostly of six distinct layers. Neurons in the neocortex are organized in vertical columns, usually referred to as *cortical columns* or *macrocolumns*, which are a fraction of a millimeter wide and traverse all the layers of the neocortex from the white matter to the pial surface [44, 45, 46]. Depending on their type of action, neurons are mainly classified as *excitatory* or *inhibitory*, wherein this distinction depends on whether they increase the firing rate in the destination neurons they are communicating with, or they suppress them. Inhibitory neurons are located in all layers and usually have axons that remain within the same area as their cell body resides, and hence they have a local range of action. Layers III, V, and VI contain pyramidal excitatory neurons whose axons can provide long-range communication (projection) throughout the neocortex. Layer IV contains primarily star-shaped excitatory interneurons that receive sensory inputs from the thalamus. Figure 3.1 shows a schematic of the structure of the neocortex, including the intracortical and corticocortical neuronal connections; see [44, Chap. 15] for further details.

On a local scale, within a cortical column, neurons are densely interconnected and involve all types of feedforward and feedback intracortical connections. Such a dense and relatively homogeneous local structure of the neocortex suggests modeling a local population of functionally similar neurons by a single *space-averaged neuron*, which preserves enough physiological information to understand the temporal patterns observed in spatially smoothed (averaged) EEG signals without creating excessive theoretical complicacies in the mathematical analysis of the model. On a global scale, in

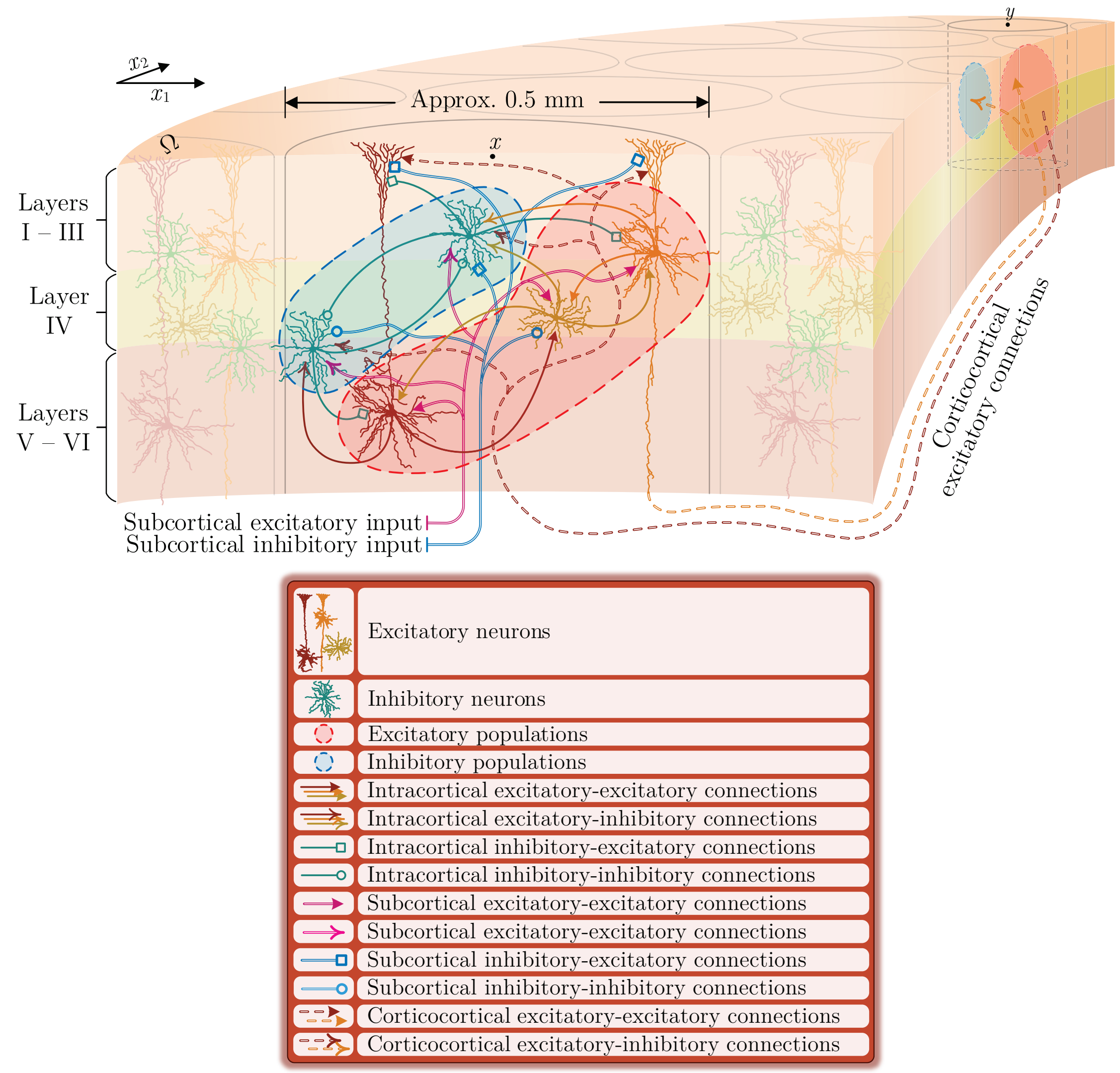


Figure 3.1: Schematic of the structure of the neocortex with intracortical and corticocortical connections.

the exclusively excitatory corticocortical communication throughout the neocortex, two major patterns of connectivity are observed, namely, a homogeneous, symmetrical, and translation-invariant pattern of connections versus a heterogeneous, patchy, and asymmetrical distribution of connections. For modeling simplicity and due to the unavailability of detailed anatomical data, in the model that we investigate in this dissertation the corticocortical connectivity is assumed to be isotropic, homogeneous, symmetric, and translation invariant [22].

To establish the mathematical framework of the model, let $\Omega = (0, \omega) \times (0, \omega)$,

$\omega > 0$, be an open rectangle in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that defines the domain of the neocortex. Each point $x = (x_1, x_2) \in \Omega$ indicates the location of a local network—possibly representing a cortical column—modeled by a space-averaged excitatory neuron and a space-averaged inhibitory neuron. Let E denote a population of excitatory neurons and let I denote a population of inhibitory neurons. For $x \in \Omega$, $t \in [0,T]$, $T > 0$, and $\mathrm{X}, \mathrm{Y} \in \{\mathrm{E}, \mathrm{I}\}$, we denote by $v_{\mathrm{X}}(x,t)$, measured in mV, the spatially mean soma membrane potential of a population of type X centered at x. We denote by $i_{\mathrm{XY}}(x,t)$, measured in mV, the spatially mean postsynaptic activation of synapses of a population of type X centered at x onto a population of type Y centered at the same point x. Moreover, we denote by $w_{\mathrm{EX}}(x,t)$, measured in s^{-1}, the mean rate of corticocortical excitatory input pulses from the entire domain of the neocortex to a population of type X centered at x. Finally, we denote by $g_{\mathrm{XY}}(x,t)$, measured in s^{-1}, the mean rate of subcortical input pulses of type X to a population of type Y centered at x. Note that, by definition, $i_{\mathrm{XY}}(x,t)$, $w_{\mathrm{EX}}(x,t)$, and $g_{\mathrm{XY}}(x,t)$ are nonnegative quantities.

Then, as developed in [22], the system of coupled ordinary and partial differential equations

$$
\begin{aligned}
(3.1)\qquad (\tau_{\mathrm{E}}\partial_t + 1)v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t) &= \frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EE}} - v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)}{|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EE}}|} i_{\mathrm{EE}}(x,t) + \frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{IE}} - v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)}{|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{IE}}|} i_{\mathrm{IE}}(x,t), \\
(\tau_{\mathrm{I}}\partial_t + 1)v_{\mathrm{I}}(x,t) &= \frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EI}} - v_{\mathrm{I}}(x,t)}{|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{EI}}|} i_{\mathrm{EI}}(x,t) + \frac{\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{II}} - v_{\mathrm{I}}(x,t)}{|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{II}}|} i_{\mathrm{II}}(x,t), \\
(\partial_t + \gamma_{\mathrm{EE}})^2 i_{\mathrm{EE}}(x,t) &= e\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EE}}\gamma_{\mathrm{EE}} \left[\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{EE}} f_{\mathrm{E}}\big(v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\big) + w_{\mathrm{EE}}(x,t) + g_{\mathrm{EE}}(x,t)\right], \\
(\partial_t + \gamma_{\mathrm{EI}})^2 i_{\mathrm{EI}}(x,t) &= e\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EI}}\gamma_{\mathrm{EI}} \left[\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{EI}} f_{\mathrm{E}}\big(v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\big) + w_{\mathrm{EI}}(x,t) + g_{\mathrm{EI}}(x,t)\right], \\
(\partial_t + \gamma_{\mathrm{IE}})^2 i_{\mathrm{IE}}(x,t) &= e\Upsilon_{\mathrm{IE}}\gamma_{\mathrm{IE}} \left[\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{IE}} f_{\mathrm{I}}\big(v_{\mathrm{I}}(x,t)\big) + g_{\mathrm{IE}}(x,t)\right], \\
(\partial_t + \gamma_{\mathrm{II}})^2 i_{\mathrm{II}}(x,t) &= e\Upsilon_{\mathrm{II}}\gamma_{\mathrm{II}} \left[\mathrm{N}_{\mathrm{II}} f_{\mathrm{I}}\big(v_{\mathrm{I}}(x,t)\big) + g_{\mathrm{II}}(x,t)\right], \\
\left[(\partial_t + \nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}})^2 - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta\right] w_{\mathrm{EE}}(x,t) &= \nu^2\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{EE}} f_{\mathrm{E}}\big(v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\big), \\
\left[(\partial_t + \nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}})^2 - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta\right] w_{\mathrm{EI}}(x,t) &= \nu^2\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}^2 \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{EI}} f_{\mathrm{E}}\big(v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\big), \qquad (x,t) \in \Omega \times (0,T],
\end{aligned}
$$

Table 3.1: Definition and range of values for the biophysical parameters of the mean field model (3.1). All electric potentials are given with respect to the mean resting soma membrane potential $v_{\text{rest}} = -70$ mV [47].

Parameter	**Definition**	**Range**	**Unit**
τ_{E}	Passive excitatory membrane decay time constant	$[0.005, 0.15]$	s
τ_{I}	Passive inhibitory membrane decay time constant	$[0.005, 0.15]$	s
V_{EE}, V_{EI}	Mean excitatory Nernst potentials	$[50, 80]$	mV
V_{IE}, V_{II}	Mean inhibitory Nernst potentials	$[-20, -5]$	mV
γ_{EE}, γ_{EI}	Excitatory postsynaptic potential rate constants	$[100, 1000]$	s^{-1}
γ_{IE}, γ_{II}	Inhibitory postsynaptic potential rate constants	$[10, 500]$	s^{-1}
Υ_{EE}, Υ_{EI}	Amplitude of excitatory postsynaptic potentials	$[0.1, 2.0]$	mV
Υ_{IE}, Υ_{II}	Amplitude of inhibitory postsynaptic potentials	$[0.1, 2.0]$	mV
N_{EE}, N_{EI}	Number of intracortical excitatory connections	$[2000, 5000]$	—
N_{IE}, N_{II}	Number of intracortical inhibitory connections	$[100, 1000]$	—
ν	Corticocortical conduction velocity	$[100, 1000]$	cm/s
Λ_{EE}, Λ_{EI}	Decay scale of corticocortical excitatory connectivities	$[0.1, 1.0]$	cm^{-1}
M_{EE}, M_{EI}	Number of corticocortical excitatory connections	$[2000, 5000]$	—
F_{E}	Maximum mean excitatory firing rate	$[50, 500]$	s^{-1}
F_{I}	Maximum mean inhibitory firing rate	$[50, 500]$	s^{-1}
μ_{E}	Excitatory firing threshold potential	$[15, 30]$	mV
μ_{I}	Inhibitory firing threshold potential	$[15, 30]$	mV
σ_{E}	Standard deviation of excitatory firing threshold potential	$[2, 7]$	mV
σ_{I}	Standard deviation of inhibitory firing threshold potential	$[2, 7]$	mV

with periodic boundary conditions provides a mean field model for the electrocortical activity in the neocortex. Here, e is the Napier constant and $f_{\text{X}}(\cdot)$ is the mean firing rate function of a population of type X and is given by

$$f_{\text{X}}\big(v_{\text{X}}(x,t)\big) := \frac{\text{F}_{\text{X}}}{1 + \exp\left(-\sqrt{2}\,\dfrac{v_{\text{X}}(x,t) - \mu_{\text{X}}}{\sigma_{\text{X}}}\right)}, \quad \text{X} \in \{\text{E}, \text{I}\}. \tag{3.2}$$

The definition of the biophysical parameters of the model and the ranges of the values they may take are given in Table 3.1. For the range of values given in Table 3.1, we have $|\text{V}_{\text{EE}}| = \text{V}_{\text{EE}}$, $|\text{V}_{\text{EI}}| = \text{V}_{\text{EI}}$, $|\text{V}_{\text{IE}}| = -\text{V}_{\text{IE}}$, and $|\text{V}_{\text{II}}| = -\text{V}_{\text{II}}$, which we use to simplify (3.1). Note that, in addition to the notational changes to the original

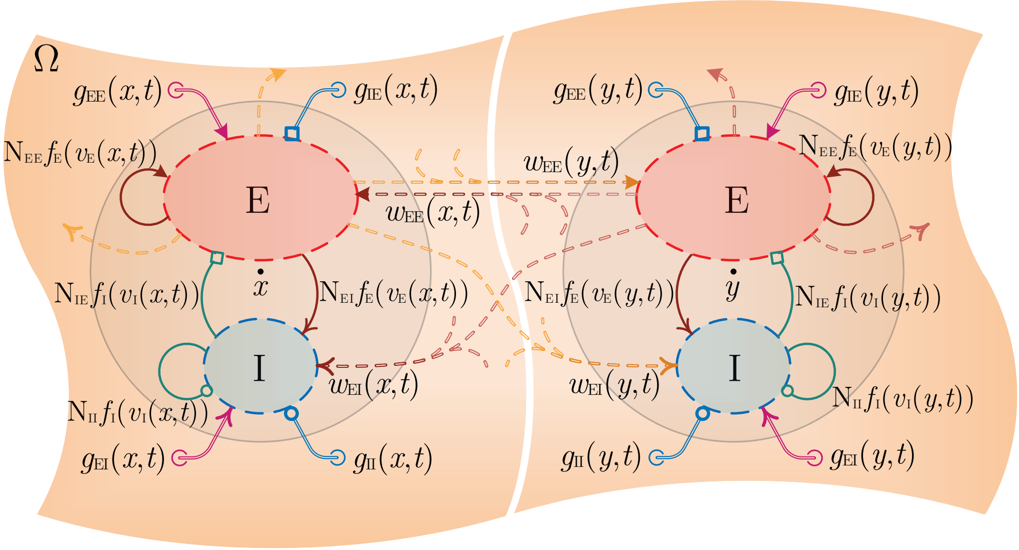


Figure 3.2: Cortical inputs to two local networks located at points x and y as modeled by (3.1).

equations given in [22], we have changed the reference of the electric potential to the *resting potential* to avoid the constant terms that would otherwise appear in (3.1). Figure 3.2 shows a schematic of intracortical, corticocortical, and subcortical inputs to two local networks located at points x and y, along with their contribution to the global corticocortical activation as modeled by (3.1). The specific coupling between the equations of the model is depicted by the block diagram shown in Figure 3.3.

The first two equations in (3.1), that is, the v-equations, model the dynamics of the resistive-capacitive membrane of the space-averaged neurons located at x. In the absence of postsynaptic i-inputs, the mean membrane potential decays exponentially to the resting potential. The fractions appearing in the equations weight the postsynaptic inputs to incorporate the effect of transmembrane diffusive ion flows into the model. Specifically, the depolarizing effect of excitatory inputs on the membrane is linearly decreased by the weights as the membrane potential rises to the Nernst (reversal) potential. When the membrane potential exceeds the Nernst potential, the effect is reversed and further excitation tends to hyperpolarize the membrane. The weights associated with the inhibitory postsynaptic inputs have opposite signs at the

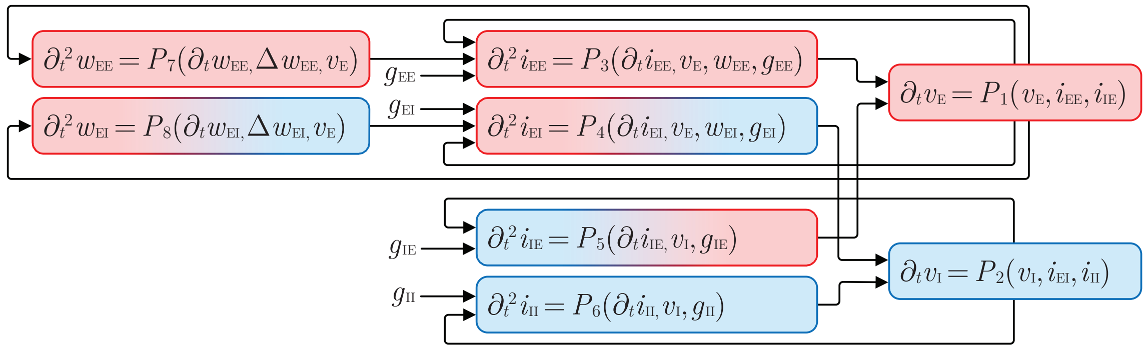


Figure 3.3: Block diagram of the mean field model (3.1). The operators $P_1, \ldots, P_8$ represent the eight equations in (3.1), respectively. As in Figures 3.1 and 3.2, the blocks associated with excitatory populations are shown in red, and the blocks associated with inhibitory populations are shown in blue.

resting potential, and hence they have an opposite reversal effect.

The critically damped second-order dynamics of the four i-equations in (3.1) generates a synaptic α-function—as in the classical dendritic cable theory—in response to an impulse. As shown in Figure 3.2, these second-order dynamical systems are driven by three different sources of presynaptic spikes, namely, the inputs $\mathrm{N}_{\text{XY}} f_{\text{X}}(v_{\text{X}})$ from local neuronal populations, the excitatory inputs w_{EX} from corticocortical fibers, and the inputs g_{XY} from subcortical regions. As a result, these four equations generate the postsynaptic responses that modulate the polarization of the cell membranes according to the v-equations discussed before.

Unlike the conduction through short-range intracortical fibers, the conduction through long-range corticocortical fibers cannot be assumed to be instantaneous. The w-equations in (3.1) form a system of telegraph equations that effectively models the propagation of the excitatory axonal pulses through corticocortical fibers. To derive these equations, it is assumed in [22] that the strength of corticocortical connections onto a local population decays exponentially with distance, with the characteristic scale Λ_{EX}. Moreover, it is assumed that the spatial distribution of connections is isotropic and homogeneous all over the neocortex.

In practical applications, the key variable in the model presented by (3.1) is the mean membrane potential of excitatory populations $v_{\text{E}}(x,t)$, which is presumed to be linearly proportional to EEG recordings from the scalp [22, 25]. For further details of the model see [22], or the introductory sections of [26, 25, 36].

Now, let

$$
\begin{aligned}
v(x,t) &:= \big(v_{\text{E}}(x,t), v_{\text{I}}(x,t)\big) \in \mathbb{R}^2,\\
i(x,t) &:= \big(i_{\text{EE}}(x,t), i_{\text{EI}}(x,t), i_{\text{IE}}(x,t), i_{\text{II}}(x,t)\big) \in \mathbb{R}^4,\\
w(x,t) &:= \big(w_{\text{EE}}(x,t), w_{\text{EI}}(x,t)\big) \in \mathbb{R}^2,\\
g(x,t) &:= \big(g_{\text{EE}}(x,t), g_{\text{EI}}(x,t), g_{\text{IE}}(x,t), g_{\text{II}}(x,t)\big) \in \mathbb{R}^4,
\end{aligned}
$$

and note that (3.1) can be represented in vector form in $\Omega \times (0,T]$ as

$$\Phi \partial_t v + v - J_1 i + J_2 v i^{\text{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v i^{\text{T}} \Psi J_5 = 0, \tag{3.3}$$

$$\partial_t^2 i + 2\Gamma \partial_t i + \Gamma^2 i - e\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w - e\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v) = e\Upsilon\Gamma g, \tag{3.4}$$

$$\partial_t^2 w + 2\nu\Lambda\partial_t w - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta w + \nu^2\Lambda^2 w - \nu^2\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f\big(v\big) = 0, \tag{3.5}$$

where v, i, and w are Ω-periodic vector-valued functions with the initial values

$$v\big|_{t=0} = v_0, \quad i\big|_{t=0} = i_0, \quad (\partial_t i)\big|_{t=0} = i_0', \quad w\big|_{t=0} = w_0, \quad (\partial_t w)\big|_{t=0} = w_0', \tag{3.6}$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\Phi = \operatorname{diag}\big(\tau_{\text{E}}, \tau_{\text{I}}\big), && \Psi = \operatorname{diag}\left(\frac{1}{|\mathrm{V}_{\text{EE}}|}, \frac{1}{|\mathrm{V}_{\text{EI}}|}, \frac{1}{|\mathrm{V}_{\text{IE}}|}, \frac{1}{|\mathrm{V}_{\text{II}}|}\right),\\
&\Gamma = \operatorname{diag}(\gamma_{\text{EE}}, \gamma_{\text{EI}}, \gamma_{\text{IE}}, \gamma_{\text{II}}), && \Upsilon = \operatorname{diag}(\Upsilon_{\text{EE}}, \Upsilon_{\text{EI}}, \Upsilon_{\text{IE}}, \Upsilon_{\text{II}}),\\
&\mathrm{N} = \operatorname{diag}(\mathrm{N}_{\text{EE}}, \mathrm{N}_{\text{EI}}, \mathrm{N}_{\text{IE}}, \mathrm{N}_{\text{II}}), && \mathrm{M} = \operatorname{diag}(\mathrm{M}_{\text{EE}}, \mathrm{M}_{\text{EI}}),\\
&\Lambda = \operatorname{diag}(\Lambda_{\text{EE}}, \Lambda_{\text{EI}}), && J_1 = \begin{bmatrix} I_{2\times 2} & -I_{2\times 2} \end{bmatrix},
\end{aligned}
\tag{3.7}
$$

$$J_2 = \operatorname{diag}(1,0), \qquad J_3 = \operatorname{diag}(0,1),$$

$$J_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}}, \qquad J_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}},$$

$$J_6 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}}, \qquad J_7 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{\mathrm{T}},$$

$$J_8 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \qquad f(v) = \begin{bmatrix} f_{\mathrm{E}}\big(\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} v\big) \\ f_{\mathrm{I}}\big(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} v\big) \end{bmatrix}.$$

For simplicity of exposition, the dependence of the functions v, i, w, and g on the arguments (x, t) is not explicitly shown in (3.3)–(3.5). Note that (3.3) and (3.4), which model the local dynamics of the neocortex, are essentially systems of ODEs. These equations do not possess any spatial smoothing component, and hence their solutions are expected to evolve in less regular function spaces [48, 49]. The system of PDEs (3.5) consists of two telegraph equations coupled indirectly through (3.3) and (3.4); see Figure 3.3.

Remark 3.1 (Variations in the parameters). In the analysis that follows in the rest of the dissertation, we assume that all the parameters of the model are constant. However, in practical applications, certain parameters may be considered to vary in time or space to model specific physiological situations in the brain. The variations can occur independently, or can be modeled using additional ODEs or PDEs coupled with the existing equations. We give all the details of the results—some of which may, however, be considered fairly standard—along with a careful inclusion of all parameters. Therefore, in applications it should be possible to easily observe where the parameters of interest appear in the analysis, and whether or not their particular variations can affect the validity of the results.

CHAPTER 4

EXISTENCE AND UNIQUENESS OF SOLUTIONS

In this chapter, we investigate the problem of existence, uniqueness, and regularity of solutions for (3.3)–(3.5) with the initial values (3.6) and periodic boundary conditions. We set appropriate spaces of Ω-periodic functions as the functional framework of the problem by which we include the boundary conditions in the solution spaces. We view $v(x,t)$, $i(x,t)$, and $w(x,t)$ as Banach space-valued functions and follow the standard technique of Galerkin approximations [20, 43, 18] to construct weak and strong solutions in Theorems 4.5 and 4.7. The details of the proof of these results can be skipped if the reader is proficient in the analysis of the Galerkin method.

First, define the function spaces

$$\begin{aligned}
&\mathcal{L}_v^2 := L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2), \qquad && \mathcal{L}_i^2 := L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^4), \qquad && \mathcal{L}_w^2 := L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2),\\
&\mathcal{L}_v^\infty := L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2), && \mathcal{L}_i^\infty := L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^4), && \mathcal{L}_w^\infty := L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2),\\
&\mathcal{H}_w^1 := H^1_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2), && \mathcal{H}_w^2 := H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2), &&\\
&\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2 := L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{2\times 2}), && \mathcal{H}_{\partial w}^1 := H^1_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^{2\times 2}), &&\\
&\mathcal{W}_w^{1,\infty} := W^{1,\infty}_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^2), && &&
\end{aligned} \tag{4.1}$$

and denote by $\mathcal{L}_v^{2*}$, $\mathcal{L}_i^{2*}$, and $\mathcal{H}_w^{1*}$ the dual spaces of $\mathcal{L}_v^2$, $\mathcal{L}_i^2$, and $\mathcal{H}_w^1$, respectively. Note that $\mathcal{L}_v^2$ and $\mathcal{L}_i^2$ are, respectively, isometrically isomorphic to $\mathcal{L}_v^{2*}$ and $\mathcal{L}_i^{2*}$ [50, Thm. 6.15], which we denote by $\mathcal{L}_v^{2*} = \mathcal{L}_v^2$ and $\mathcal{L}_i^{2*} = \mathcal{L}_i^2$. By the Rellich–Kondrachov compact embedding theorems we have $\mathcal{H}_w^1 \Subset \mathcal{L}_w^2 \hookrightarrow \mathcal{H}_w^{1*}$; see [42, Thm. 6.6-3] and [20, Thm. A.4]. Moreover, there exists a dual orthogonal basis of $\mathcal{H}_w^1$ and $\mathcal{L}_w^2$ given by the following lemma. The proof of this lemma is fairly standard and follows the general results given in [18, sect. II.2.1].

Lemma 4.1 (Dual orthogonal basis). *There exists an orthonormal basis of* $\mathcal{L}^2_w$ *that is also an orthogonal basis of* $\mathcal{H}^1_w$*, and can be constructed by the eigenfunctions of the linear operator* $A := -\Delta + I$*.*

Now, before proceeding to the main results of this chapter, we define the notions of *weak* and *strong* solutions of (3.3)–(3.6) as used in this dissertation.

Definition 4.2 (Weak solution). *A solution* (v, i, w) *is called an* Ω*-periodic* weak solution *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6) *if it solves the weak version of the problem wherein the equations are understood as equalities in the space of duals* $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^{2*}_v \times \mathcal{L}^{2*}_i \times \mathcal{H}^{1*}_w)$*. That is, the functions*

$$v \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_v), \quad i \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i), \quad w \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^1_w)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{d}_t v \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^{2*}_v), && \mathrm{d}_t i \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i), && \mathrm{d}_t^2 i \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^{2*}_i), \\ &\mathrm{d}_t w \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w), && \mathrm{d}_t^2 w \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^{1*}_w) && \end{aligned}$$

construct an Ω*-periodic weak solution for* (3.3)–(3.6) *if, for every* $\ell_v \in \mathcal{L}^2_v$, $\ell_i \in \mathcal{L}^2_i$, $h_w \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$*, and almost every* $t \in [0,T]$, $T > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \Phi \mathrm{d}_t v, \ell_v \rangle_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + (v, \ell_v)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} - (J_1 i, \ell_v)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \qquad& \\ + \left(J_2 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, \ell_v\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} &= 0, \end{aligned} \tag{4.2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 i, \ell_i \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + 2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i, \ell_i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \left(\Gamma^2 i, \ell_i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} - e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma J_6 w, \ell_i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \qquad& \\ - e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v), \ell_i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} &= e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma g, \ell_i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}, \end{aligned} \tag{4.3}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w, h_w \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + 2\nu\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w, h_w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x w, \partial_x h_w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \qquad& \\ + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w, h_w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), h_w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &= 0 \end{aligned} \tag{4.4}$$

with the initial values

$$v(0) = v_0, \quad i(0) = i_0, \quad \mathrm{d}_t i(0) = i_0', \quad w(0) = w_0, \quad \mathrm{d}_t w(0) = w_0'. \tag{4.5}$$

Definition 4.3 (Strong solution). *A solution* (v, i, w) *is called an* Ω*-periodic* strong solution *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6) *if it solves the strong version of the problem wherein the equations are understood as equalities in* $L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_v \times \mathcal{L}^2_i \times \mathcal{L}^2_w)$*. That is, the functions*

$$v \in H^1(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_v), \quad i \in H^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_i), \quad w \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{H}^2_w)$$

with

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathrm{d}_t v \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_v), \qquad \mathrm{d}_t i \in H^1(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_i), \quad \mathrm{d}_t^2 i \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_i), \\ &\mathrm{d}_t w \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{H}^1_w), \quad \mathrm{d}_t^2 w \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_w) \end{aligned}$$

construct an Ω*-periodic strong solution for* (3.3)–(3.6) *wherein they solve the equations for almost every* $x \in \Omega$ *and almost every* $t \in [0, T]$*,* $T > 0$*.*

Now, let $\mathcal{B}_v = \left\{\ell_v^{(l)}\right\}_{l=1}^{\infty}$ be a basis of $\mathcal{L}^2_v$ such that $\left\{\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} \ell_v^{(l)}\right\}_{l=1}^{\infty}$ is orthonormal in $\mathcal{L}^2_v$. Note that (3.7), with the range of values given in Table 3.1, implies that Φ is a positive-definite diagonal matrix, and hence such a basis exists. Moreover, let $\mathcal{B}_i = \left\{\ell_i^{(l)}\right\}_{l=1}^{\infty}$ be an orthonormal basis of $\mathcal{L}^2_i$, and let $\mathcal{B}_w = \left\{h_w^{(l)}\right\}_{l=1}^{\infty}$ be an orthogonal basis of $\mathcal{H}^1_w$ that is orthonormal in $\mathcal{L}^2_w$; see Lemma 4.1 for the existence and structure of $\mathcal{B}_w$. Finally, construct the set $\mathcal{B} = \left\{b^{(k)}\right\}_{k=1}^{\infty} \subset \mathcal{L}^2_v \times \mathcal{L}^2_i \times \mathcal{H}^1_w$ as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{B} &:= \mathcal{B}_v \times \mathcal{B}_i \times \mathcal{B}_w \\ &= \left\{ b^{(k)} = \left(\ell_v^{(k)}, \ell_i^{(k)}, h_w^{(k)}\right) : \ell_v^{(k)} \in \mathcal{B}_v, \ell_i^{(k)} \in \mathcal{B}_i, h_w^{(k)} \in \mathcal{B}_w \right\}_{k=1}^{\infty}. \end{aligned} \tag{4.6}$$

For each positive integer m, we seek approximations $v^{(m)} : [0,T] \to \mathcal{L}_v^2$, $i^{(m)} : [0,T] \to \mathcal{L}_i^2$, and $w^{(m)} : [0,T] \to \mathcal{H}_w^1$ of the form

$$v^{(m)}(t) := \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{m} c_{v_k}^{(m)}(t)\ell_v^{(k)}, \tag{4.7}$$

$$i^{(m)}(t) := \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{m} c_{i_k}^{(m)}(t)\ell_i^{(k)}, \tag{4.8}$$

$$w^{(m)}(t) := \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{m} c_{w_k}^{(m)}(t)h_w^{(k)}, \tag{4.9}$$

constructed by the first m components of $\mathcal{B}$ and sufficiently smooth scalar-valued functions $c_{v_k}^{(m)}$, $c_{i_k}^{(m)}$, and $c_{w_k}^{(m)}$ on $[0,T]$ such that these approximations satisfy

$$\begin{aligned}(4.10)\quad &\left(\Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, \ell_v^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \left(v^{(m)}, \ell_v^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} - \left(J_1 i^{(m)}, \ell_v^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\qquad + \left(J_2 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, \ell_v^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} = 0, \\ (4.11)\quad &\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + 2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \left(\Gamma^2 i^{(m)}, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &\qquad -e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v^{(m)}), \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} = e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma g, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}, \\ (4.12)\quad &\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + 2\nu\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}, h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \\ &\qquad + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x w^{(m)}, \partial_x h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2} + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}, h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \\ &\qquad\qquad -\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} = 0\end{aligned}$$

for all $t \in [0,T]$ and $k = 1, \ldots, m$, subject to the initial conditions

$$\begin{aligned}(4.13)\quad &c_{v_k}^{(m)}(0) = \left(v_0, \ell_v^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}, \qquad c_{i_k}^{(m)}(0) = \left(i_0, \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}, \quad \mathrm{d}_t c_{i_k}^{(m)}(0) = \left(i_0', \ell_i^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}, \\ &c_{w_k}^{(m)}(0) = \left(w_0, h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}, \quad \mathrm{d}_t c_{w_k}^{(m)}(0) = \left(w_0', h_w^{(k)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}\end{aligned}$$

on the coefficients $c_k^{(m)}(t) := (c_{v_k}^{(m)}(t), c_{i_k}^{(m)}(t), c_{w_k}^{(m)}(t)) \in \mathbb{R}^3$.

Equations (4.10)–(4.13) are equivalent to a system of nonlinear $3m$-dimensional ODEs on coefficients $c^{(m)}(t) = (c_1^{(m)}(t), \ldots, c_m^{(m)}(t)) \in \mathbb{R}^{3m}$. Therefore, by the standard theory of ODEs [51, Thm. 2.1], there exists a unique function $c^{(m)}(t)$ that solves (4.10)–(4.13) for $t \in [0, T_m)$, $T_m > 0$, with the approximations (4.7)–(4.9). Moreover, $T_m = T$ for all positive integers m, which follows from Proposition 4.4.

The standard Galerkin approximation method involves providing energy estimates that are uniform in m for all the approximations $(v^{(m)}, i^{(m)}, w^{(m)})$. Such a priori energy estimates then allow construction of solutions by passing to the limits as $m \to \infty$. The following proposition gives the desired estimates for the approximations (4.7)–(4.9).

Proposition 4.4 (Energy estimates). *Suppose* $g \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}^2_i)$ *and, for every positive integer* m*, let* $v^{(m)}$*,* $i^{(m)}$*, and* $w^{(m)}$ *be functions of the form* (4.7)–(4.9)*, respectively, satisfying* (4.10)–(4.12) *with the initial conditions* (4.13)*. Then there exist positive constants* α_v*,* β_v*,* α_i*, and* α_w*, dependent only on the parameters of the model, such that for every positive integer* m*,*

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\| v^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \right) + \left\| \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)} \right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^{2*}_v)} \leq \kappa_v, \tag{4.14}$$

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\| \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \left\| i^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \right) + \left\| \mathrm{d}^2_t i^{(m)} \right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^{2*}_i)} \leq \kappa_i, \tag{4.15}$$

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\| \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\| w^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \right) + \left\| \mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)} \right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^{1*}_w)} \leq \kappa_w, \tag{4.16}$$

where κ_v*,* κ_i*, and* κ_w *are positive constants given, independently of* m*, by*

$$\kappa_v := \alpha_v \left(\left(1 + (1 + \sqrt{\kappa_i})^2 T\right) \exp\left(\beta_v \sqrt{\kappa_i} T\right) \left[\|v_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \sqrt{\kappa_i} \right] + \kappa_i T \right), \tag{4.17}$$

$$\kappa_i := \alpha_i \Big((1 + T) \left[\|i_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|i_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \right] + (2 + T) \Big[T \left(\kappa_w + |\Omega| \right) + \|g\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i)} \Big] \Big), \tag{4.18}$$

$$\kappa_w := \alpha_w \left((1 + T) \left[\|w_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \|w_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \right] + (2 + T) T |\Omega| \right). \tag{4.19}$$

Proof. Multiplying (4.12) by $\mathrm{d}_t c^{(m)}_{w_k}$ and summing over $k = 1, \ldots, m$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + 2\nu \left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2} \nu^2 \left(\partial_x w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t \partial_x w^{(m)} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \\ + \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} = 0, \end{aligned}$$

or, equivalently,

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t\left[\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\partial_x w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}^2+\nu^2\left\|\Lambda w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2\right]$$

$$+2\nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2-\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v^{(m)}),\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}=0.$$

Now, Young's inequality implies that, for every $\varepsilon_1>0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v^{(m)}),\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}&\le\varepsilon_1\nu^2\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{\nu^2}{4\varepsilon_1}\left\|\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v^{(m)})\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2\\&=\varepsilon_1\nu^2\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{\nu^2}{4\varepsilon_1}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\int_\Omega\left|f_{\mathrm{E}}(v_{\mathrm{E}}^{(m)})\right|^2\mathrm{d}x\\&\le\varepsilon_1\nu^2\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{\nu^2}{4\varepsilon_1}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2).\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\mathrm{d}_t\left[\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\partial_x w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}^2+\nu^2\left\|\Lambda w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2\right]+2\nu(2\Lambda_{\min}-\varepsilon_1\nu)\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2$$

$$\le\frac{\nu^2}{2\varepsilon_1}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2),$$

where $\Lambda_{\min}:=\min\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}},\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}\}$ is the smallest eigenvalue of Λ.

Next, setting $\varepsilon_1=\frac{2}{\nu}\Lambda_{\min}$ and integrating with respect to time over $[0,t]$ yields

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\partial_x w^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}^2+\nu^2\left\|\Lambda w^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2\\&\qquad\le\left(\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\partial_x w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}^2+\nu^2\left\|\Lambda w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2\right)\Bigg|_{t=0}\\&\qquad\quad+\frac{1}{4}\frac{\nu^3}{\Lambda_{\min}}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)t,\end{aligned}$$

which, using (4.13), implies

$$\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\left\|w^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}^2\le\hat{\alpha}_w\left(\|w_0'\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}^2+\|w_0\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}^2+\frac{1}{4}\frac{\nu^3}{\Lambda_{\min}}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)t\right)$$

for all $t \in [0,T]$ and some $\hat{\alpha}_w > 0$. Since this inequality holds for all $t \in [0,T]$, it follows that

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\| \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\| w^{(m)}(t) \right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \right) \le \hat{\kappa}_w, \tag{4.20}$$

where

$$\hat{\kappa}_w := \hat{\alpha}_w \left(\|w_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \|w_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \frac{1}{4}\frac{\nu^3}{\Lambda_{\min}} |\Omega| \mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\, \mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) T \right).$$

Now, fix $\bar{h} \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$ such that $\left\|\bar{h}\right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \le 1$ and decompose $\bar{h}$ as $\bar{h} = h + h^{\perp}$, where $h \in \mathrm{span}\{h_w^{(k)}\}_{k=1}^m$ and $\left(h_w^{(k)}, h^{\perp}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} = 0$, $k = 1, \ldots, m$. Since the basis $\mathcal{B}_w$ used to construct $\mathcal{B}$ in (4.6) is orthonormal in $\mathcal{L}^2_w$, it follows from (4.9) that

$$\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, \bar{h} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} = \left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, \bar{h} \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} = \left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, h \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w},$$

where the first equality holds since $\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)} \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$; see the proof of [43, Thm. 5.9-1]. Therefore, (4.12) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, \bar{h} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} = &- 2\nu \left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}, h \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2 \left(\partial_x w^{(m)}, \partial_x h \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \\ &- \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}, h \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), h \right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}. \end{aligned}$$

Since $\mathcal{B}_w$ is orthogonal in $\mathcal{H}^1_w$, we have $\|h\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \le \left\|\bar{h}\right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \le 1$, and hence the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality gives

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, \bar{h} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \right| \le\; & 2\nu \left\| \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2 \left\| \partial_x w^{(m)} \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \\ & + \nu^2 \left\| \Lambda^2 w^{(m)} \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2 \left\| \Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}) \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\ \le\; & \alpha_1 \left(\left\| \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)} \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\| w^{(m)} \right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \nu^2 \left(|\Omega| \mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\, \mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

for some $\alpha_1 > 0$. Therefore, there exists $\alpha_2 > 0$ such that

$$\int_0^T \left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}_w^{1*}} \mathrm{d}t \leq \alpha_2 \int_0^T \left(\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + \left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}_w^1} + \nu^4 |\Omega| \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \right) \mathrm{d}t,$$

which, using (4.20), yields

$$\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}_w^{1*})} \leq \alpha_2 \left(\hat{\kappa}_w + \nu^4 |\Omega| \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \right) T.$$

This inequality, together with (4.20), establishes the bound (4.16) with (4.19) for some $\alpha_w > 0$.

Next, multiplying (4.11) by $\mathrm{d}_t c_{i_k}^{(m)}$ and summing over $k = 1, \ldots, m$ yields

(4.21)

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + 2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \left(\Gamma^2 i^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ - e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v^{(m)}), \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} = e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma g, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}. \end{aligned}$$

For the second term, we have

$$\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \geq \gamma_{\min} \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2},$$

where $\gamma_{\min} := \min\{\gamma_{\mathrm{EE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{EI}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{IE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{II}}\}$ is the smallest eigenvalue of Γ. Now, using Young's inequality and recalling (4.16) we obtain, for every $\varepsilon_2, \ldots, \varepsilon_4 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} e\left(\Upsilon \Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\leq \varepsilon_2 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_2} \left\|\Upsilon \Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &\leq \varepsilon_2 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_2} \left\|\Upsilon \Gamma J_6\right\|_2^2 \left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \\ &\leq \varepsilon_2 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \frac{e^2 \kappa_w}{4\varepsilon_2} \left\|\Upsilon \Gamma J_6\right\|_2^2, \end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7 f(v^{(m)}), \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\le \varepsilon_3 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_3}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7 f(v^{(m)})\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 \\
&\le \varepsilon_3 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_3}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\right\|_2^2 \left\|f(v^{(m)})\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 \\
&\le \varepsilon_3 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2|\Omega|}{4\varepsilon_3}(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\right\|_2^2, \\
e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma g, \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\le \varepsilon_4 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 \\
&\le \varepsilon_4 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\right\|_2^2 \left\|g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence, with the above inequalities, (4.21) implies

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\mathrm{d}_t\left[\left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \left\|\Gamma i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\right] + 2(2\gamma_{\min} - \varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_3 - \varepsilon_4)\left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 \\
&\qquad \le \frac{e^2\kappa_w}{2\varepsilon_2}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\right\|_2^2 + \frac{e^2|\Omega|}{2\varepsilon_3}(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\right\|_2^2 + \frac{e^2}{2\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\right\|_2^2 \left\|g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, setting $\varepsilon_2 = \varepsilon_3 = \frac{1}{2}\gamma_{\min}$ and $\varepsilon_4 = \gamma_{\min}$, integrating with respect to time over $[0,t]$, and taking the supremum over $t \in [0,T]$, we have

$$
\sup_{t\in[0,T]}\left(\left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \left\|i^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\right) \le \hat{\kappa}_i, \tag{4.22}
$$

where, for some $\hat{\alpha}_i > 0$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\hat{\kappa}_i = \hat{\alpha}_i\Bigg(&\|i_0'\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \|i_0\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \left[\frac{e^2\kappa_w}{\gamma_{\min}}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\right\|_2^2 + \frac{e^2|\Omega|}{\gamma_{\min}}(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\right\|_2^2\right] T. \\
&+ \frac{e^2}{2\gamma_{\min}}\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\right\|_2^2 \left\|g\right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)}^2\Bigg).
\end{aligned}
$$

Fix $\bar{\ell} \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$ such that $\left\|\bar{\ell}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \le 1$ and decompose $\bar{\ell}$ as $\bar{\ell} = \ell + \ell^{\perp}$, where $\ell \in \mathrm{span}\{\ell_i^{(k)}\}_{k=1}^m$

and $\left(\ell_i^{(k)}, \ell^{\perp}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} = 0$, $k = 1, \dots, m$. Using (4.8) and (4.11), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \bar{\ell}\,\right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} = \left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \bar{\ell}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &= \left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &= -2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}, \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - \left(\Gamma^2 i^{(m)}, \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}, \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &\quad + e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v^{(m)}), \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma g, \ell\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}.\end{aligned}$$

The orthogonality of the basis $\mathcal{B}_i$ in (4.6) implies $\|\ell\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \leq 1$, and hence

$$\begin{aligned}\left|\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}, \bar{\ell}\right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}\right| &\leq 2\|\Gamma\|_2 \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \left\|\Gamma^2\right\|_2 \left\|i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &\quad + e\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + e\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v^{(m)})\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + e\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, it follows from the same inequalities used to derive (4.22) that, for some $\alpha_3 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^{2*})} \leq \alpha_3 \Big(&\left[\hat{\kappa}_i + e^2\kappa_w \left\|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\right\|_2^2 + e^2|\Omega|(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7\right\|_2^2\right]T \\ &+ e^2\left\|\Upsilon\Gamma\right\|_2^2 \|g\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)}\Big).\end{aligned}$$

This, together with (4.22), establishes the bound (4.15) with (4.18) for some $\alpha_i > 0$.

Finally, multiplying (4.10) by $c_{v_k}^{(m)}$ and summing over $k = 1, \dots, m$ yields

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, v^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &+ \left(v^{(m)}, v^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} - \left(J_1 i^{(m)}, v^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &+ \left(J_2 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, v^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} = 0.\end{aligned} \tag{4.23}$$

Now, using Young's inequality and recalling (4.15), we obtain, for every $\varepsilon_5 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\left(J_1 i^{(m)}, v^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &\leq \varepsilon_5 \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_5}\left\|J_1 i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\leq \varepsilon_5 \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_5}\left\|i^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\leq \varepsilon_5 \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \frac{\kappa_i}{2\varepsilon_5}.\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, using Hölder's inequality in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality in $\mathbb{R}^4$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
-\Big(J_2 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, v^{(m)}\Big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}& \\
&= -\int_\Omega \left[\left(v_1^{(m)}\right)^2 {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + \left(v_2^{(m)}\right)^2 {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5\right] \mathrm{d}x \\
&\le \int_\Omega \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2 \max\left\{\left|{i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4\right|, \left|{i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5\right|\right\} \mathrm{d}x \\
&\le \int_\Omega \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2 \left\|i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathbb{R}^4} \max\left\{\|\Psi J_4\|_{\mathbb{R}^4}, \|\Psi J_5\|_{\mathbb{R}^4}\right\} \mathrm{d}x \\
&\le \sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2 \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}^2 .
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, (4.23) implies

$$\mathrm{d}_t \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}^2 + 2\left(1 - \varepsilon_5 - \sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2\right) \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}^2 \le \frac{\kappa_i}{\varepsilon_5}.$$

Next, setting $\varepsilon_5 = 1$ and using Grönwall's inequality [18, sect. III.1.1.3.] yields

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\|v^{(m)}(t)\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}^2\right) \le \hat{\kappa}_v, \tag{4.24}$$

where, for some $\hat{\alpha}_v > 0$ and $\hat{\beta}_v > 0$,

$$\hat{\kappa}_v = \hat{\alpha}_v \exp\left(\hat{\beta}_v \sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2\, T\right) \left(\|v_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}^2 + \frac{\kappa_i}{\sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2}\right).$$

Now, fix $\bar{\ell} \in \mathcal{L}^2_v$ such that $\left\|\bar{\ell}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \le 1$ and decompose $\bar{\ell}$ as $\bar{\ell} = \ell + \ell^\perp$, where $\ell \in \operatorname{span}\{\ell_v^{(k)}\}_{k=1}^m$ and $\left(\Phi \ell_v^{(k)}, \ell^\perp\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} = 0$, $k = 1, \ldots, m$. Note that this decomposition exists because of the way we construct the basis $\mathcal{B}_v$ in (4.6), wherein the elements, weighted by $\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}$, are orthonormal in $\mathcal{L}_v^2$. Then, it follows from (4.7) and (4.10) that

$$\begin{aligned}\left\langle \Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, \bar{\ell} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} = \left(\Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, \bar{\ell} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &= \left(\Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, \ell \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &= -\left(v^{(m)}, \ell \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \left(J_1 i^{(m)}, \ell \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\quad - \left(J_2 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, \ell \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}.\end{aligned}$$

Since $\mathcal{B}_v$ is a $\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}$-weighted orthonormal set in $\mathcal{L}_v^2$, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}\|\ell\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &\leq \left\|\Phi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} \ell\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \leq \left\|\Phi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} \bar{\ell}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \leq \left\|\Phi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\bar{\ell}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\leq \left\|\Phi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2\end{aligned}$$

and hence, letting $\alpha_4 := \left\|\Phi^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2 \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}\right\|_2$ and using the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\left| \left\langle \Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}, \bar{\ell} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \right| &\leq \alpha_4 \Bigg(\left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \left\|J_1 i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\qquad + \left\| J_2 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m)} {i^{(m)}}^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5 \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \Bigg) \\ &\leq \alpha_4 \left(\left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \sqrt{2} \left\|i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + 2\sqrt{2} \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \left\|i^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \|\Psi\|_2 \right) \\ &\leq \alpha_4 \left(\left(1 + 2\sqrt{2\kappa_i} \|\Psi\|_2\right) \left\|v^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \sqrt{2\kappa_i} \right),\end{aligned}$$

which along with (4.24) implies that, for some $\alpha_5 > 0$,

$$\left\|\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\right\|_{L^2(0,T;{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^*)}^2 \leq \alpha_5 \left(\left(1 + 2\sqrt{2\kappa_i} \|\Psi\|_2\right)^2 \hat{\kappa}_v + 2\kappa_i \right) T.$$

This, together with (4.24), establishes the bound (4.14) with (4.17) for some $\alpha_v > 0$. Note that constants $\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_5$, $\hat{\alpha}_v$, $\hat{\beta}_v$, $\hat{\alpha}_i$, and $\hat{\alpha}_w$ depend only on the parameters of the model, which further implies that the constants α_v, β_v, α_i, and α_w also depend only on the parameters of the model and completes the proof. ■

Theorem 4.5 (Existence and uniqueness of weak solutions). *Suppose that* $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$*,* $v_0 \in \mathcal{L}_v^2$*,* $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$*,* $i_0' \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$*,* $w_0 \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$*, and* $w_0' \in \mathcal{L}_w^2$*. Then there exists a unique* Ω*-periodic weak solution* (v,i,w) *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6).

Proof. The energy estimate (4.14) implies that the sequence $\{v^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)$ and the sequence $\{\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^{2*})$. Since $\mathcal{L}_v^{2*} = \mathcal{L}_v^2$, it follows that $\{v^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)$ and $\{\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)$. Similarly, since $\mathcal{L}_i^{2*} = \mathcal{L}_i^2$, the energy estimate (4.15) implies that the sequence $\{i^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $H^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$, the sequence $\{\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$, and the sequence $\{\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$. Finally, the energy estimate (4.16) implies that the sequence $\{w^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}_w^1)$, the sequence $\{\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_w^2)$, and the sequence $\{\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\}_{m=1}^{\infty}$ is bounded in $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}_w^{1*})$. Now, it follows from the Rellich–Kondrachov compact embedding theorems [42, Thm. 6.6-3] that $H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2) \Subset L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)$ and $H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2) \Subset L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$. Therefore, by [42, Thm. 2.10-1b], there exist subsequences $\{v^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$, $\{i^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$, and $\{\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} v^{(m_k)} &\to v \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2), \\ i^{(m_k)} &\to i \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2), \\ \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m_k)} &\to i' \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2). \end{aligned} \tag{4.25}$$

Moreover, by the Banach–Eberlein–Šmulian theorem [42, Thm. 5.14-4], there exist subsequences

$$\{\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, \quad \{\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, \quad \{w^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, \quad \{\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}, \quad \{\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$$

such that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m_k)} &\rightharpoonup v' \quad \text{weakly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_v),\\
\mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m_k)} &\rightharpoonup i'' \quad \text{weakly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i),\\
w^{(m_k)} &\rightharpoonup w \quad \text{weakly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^1_w),\\
\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m_k)} &\rightharpoonup w' \quad \text{weakly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w),\\
\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m_k)} &\rightharpoonup w'' \quad \text{weakly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^{1*}_w),
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.26}
$$

where the time derivatives in the above analysis are derivatives in the weak sense.

Next, we show that

$$v' = \mathrm{d}_t v, \quad i' = \mathrm{d}_t i, \quad i'' = \mathrm{d}_t^2 i, \quad w' = \mathrm{d}_t w, \quad w'' = \mathrm{d}_t^2 w.$$

Since $L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^1_w)$ is reflexive, the weak and weak* convergences coincide. Recalling the definitions of weak* convergence and weak derivatives, it follows that, for every $h \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$ and $\phi \in C^\infty_{\mathrm{c}}([0,T])$,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\langle \int_0^T w''\phi \mathrm{d}t, h \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} &= \int_0^T \langle w''\phi, h\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \mathrm{d}t = \lim_{k\to\infty} \int_0^T \left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m_k)}\phi, h\right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \mathrm{d}t\\
&= \lim_{k\to\infty} \left\langle \int_0^T \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m_k)}\phi \mathrm{d}t, h \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} = \lim_{k\to\infty} \left\langle (-1)^2 \int_0^T w^{(m_k)} \mathrm{d}_t^2\phi \mathrm{d}t, h \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\\
&= \lim_{k\to\infty} (-1)^2 \int_0^T \left\langle w^{(m_k)} \mathrm{d}_t^2 \phi, h\right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \mathrm{d}t = (-1)^2 \int_0^T \left\langle w \mathrm{d}_t^2\phi, h\right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \mathrm{d}t\\
&= \left\langle (-1)^2 \int_0^T w \mathrm{d}_t^2 \phi \mathrm{d}t, h \right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w},
\end{aligned}
$$

which implies $w'' = \mathrm{d}_t^2 w$ in the weak sense. The other identities are proved similarly.

Now, recall (3.2) and (3.7) and note that the nonlinear map $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ is bounded and smooth, and in particular is Lipschitz continuous. Therefore, it follows from the strong convergence of $\{v^{(m_k)}\}_{k=1}^{\infty}$ in (4.25) that

$$f(v^{(m_k)}) \to f(v) \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2). \tag{4.27}$$

For the bilinear term $J_2 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4$, use (4.14) and (4.15) to write

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left\| J_2\big(v i^{\mathrm{T}} - v^{(m_k)} i^{(m_k)\mathrm{T}}\big)\Psi J_4 \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} \\
&\qquad \le \left\| J_2 (v - v^{(m_k)}) i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} + \left\| J_2 v^{(m_k)} (i - i^{(m_k)})^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} \\
&\qquad \le \sqrt{2}\, \|\Psi\|_2 \Big[\left\| v - v^{(m_k)} \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} \|i\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)} \\
&\qquad\qquad\qquad + \left\| v^{(m_k)} \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} \left\| i - i^{(m_k)} \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)} \Big] \\
&\qquad \le \sqrt{2}\, \|\Psi\|_2 \left[\sqrt{\kappa_i}\, \left\| v - v^{(m_k)} \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} + \sqrt{\kappa_v}\, \left\| i - i^{(m_k)} \right\|_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)} \right].
\end{aligned}$$

The same inequality holds for the bilinear term $J_3 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5$ as well. Therefore, (4.25) gives

$$\begin{aligned}
&J_2 v^{(m_k)} i^{(m_k)\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 \to J_2 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2), \\
&J_3 v^{(m_k)} i^{(m_k)\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5 \to J_3 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5 \quad \text{strongly in } L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2).
\end{aligned} \tag{4.28}$$

Next, fix a positive integer K and choose the functions

$$\begin{aligned}
\hat{v} &= \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{K} c_{v_k}(t) \ell_v^{(k)} \ \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}_v^2), \\
\hat{i} &= \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{K} c_{i_k}(t) \ell_i^{(k)} \ \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \\
\hat{w} &= \sum\nolimits_{k=1}^{K} c_{w_k}(t) h_w^{(k)} \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{H}_w^1),
\end{aligned}$$

where c_{v_k}, c_{i_k}, and c_{w_k} are sufficiently smooth functions on $[0,T]$, and $(\ell_v^{(k)}, \ell_i^{(k)}, h_w^{(k)})$, $k = 1, \dots, K$, are the first K components of $\mathcal{B}$ given by (4.6). Set $m = m_k$ in (4.10)–(4.12) and choose $m_k \ge K$. Then, multiplying (4.10)–(4.12) by c_{v_k}, c_{i_k}, and c_{w_k}, respectively, summing over $k = 1, \dots, K$, and integrating over $t \in [0, T]$ yields

$$\begin{aligned}
(4.29) \quad & \int_0^T \Big[\left\langle \Phi \mathrm{d}_t v^{(m_k)}, \hat{v} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \left(v^{(m_k)}, \hat{v} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} - \left(J_1 i^{(m_k)}, \hat{v} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\
& \qquad + \left(J_2 v^{(m_k)} i^{(m_k)^{\mathrm{T}}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v^{(m_k)} i^{(m_k)^{\mathrm{T}}} \Psi J_5, \hat{v} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \Big] \mathrm{d}t = 0, \\
& \int_0^T \Big[\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 i^{(m_k)}, \hat{i} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + 2 \left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i^{(m_k)}, \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \left(\Gamma^2 i^{(m_k)}, \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\
& -e \left(\Upsilon \Gamma J_6 w^{(m_k)}, \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - e \left(\Upsilon \Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v^{(m_k)}), \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - e \left(\Upsilon \Gamma g, \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \Big] \mathrm{d}t = 0, \\
& \int_0^T \Big[\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m_k)}, \hat{w} \right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + 2\nu \left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m_k)}, \hat{w} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + \frac{3}{2} \nu^2 \left(\partial_x w^{(m_k)}, \partial_x \hat{w} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2} \\
& \qquad + \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m_k)}, \hat{w} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} - \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), \hat{w} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \Big] \mathrm{d}t = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Note that the families of functions $\hat{v}$, $\hat{i}$, and $\hat{w}$ chosen above are dense in the spaces $L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}_v^2)$, $L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}_i^2)$, and $L^2(0, T; \mathcal{H}_w^1)$, respectively. Therefore, (4.29) holds for all functions $\hat{v} \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}_v^2)$, $\hat{i} \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{L}_i^2)$, and $\hat{w} \in L^2(0, T; \mathcal{H}_w^1)$. Now, use (4.25)–(4.28) to pass to the limits in (4.29), which implies that (4.2)–(4.4) hold for all $\ell_v \in \mathcal{L}_v^2$, $\ell_i \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$, $h_w \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$, and almost every $t \in [0, T]$.

It remains to verify the initial conditions (4.5). Choose the functions

$$\hat{v} \in C^1([0, T]; \mathcal{L}_v^2), \quad \hat{i} \in C^2([0, T]; \mathcal{L}_i^2), \quad \hat{w} \in C^2([0, T]; \mathcal{H}_w^1)$$

such that these functions vanish at the end point $t = T$. Integrating by parts in (4.29) yields

(4.30)

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_0^T \Big[- \left(\Phi v^{(m_k)}, \mathrm{d}_t \hat{v} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = \left(\Phi v^{(m_k)}(0), \hat{v}(0) \right)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}, \\
& \int_0^T \Big[\left(i^{(m_k)}, \mathrm{d}_t^2 \hat{i} \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = \cdots + \left(\mathrm{d}_t i^{(m_k)}(0), \hat{i}(0) \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - \left(i^{(m_k)}(0), \mathrm{d}_t \hat{i}(0) \right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}, \\
& \int_0^T \Big[\left(w^{(m_k)}, \mathrm{d}_t^2 \hat{w} \right)_{\mathcal{H}_w^1} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = \left(\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m_k)}(0), \hat{w}(0) \right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} - \left(w^{(m_k)}(0), \mathrm{d}_t \hat{w}(0) \right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2},
\end{aligned}$$

where "$\cdots$" denotes terms that are not pertinent to the analysis. Similarly, integrating by parts in the limit of (4.29) yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\int_0^T \Big[- (\Phi v, \mathrm{d}_t \hat{v})_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = (\Phi v(0), \hat{v}(0))_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} , \\
&\int_0^T \Big[\Big(i, \mathrm{d}_t^2 \hat{i}\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = \cdots + \Big(\mathrm{d}_t i(0), \hat{i}(0)\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - \Big(i(0), \mathrm{d}_t \hat{i}(0)\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} , \\
&\int_0^T \Big[\big(w, \mathrm{d}_t^2 \hat{w}\big)_{\mathcal{H}_w^1} + \cdots \Big] \mathrm{d}t = (\mathrm{d}_t w(0), \hat{w}(0))_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} - (w(0), \mathrm{d}_t \hat{w}(0))_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} .
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.31}
$$

Now, consider the initial conditions (4.13), pass to the limits in (4.30) through (4.25)–(4.28), and compare the results with (4.31). Since $\hat{v}$, $\hat{i}$, and $\hat{w}$ are arbitrary, the initial condition (4.5) holds and this completes the proof of existence.

To prove uniqueness, assume by contradiction that there exist two weak solutions $(\tilde{v}, \tilde{i}, \tilde{w})$ and $(\hat{v}, \hat{i}, \hat{w})$ for (3.1), initiating from the same initial values, such that $(\tilde{v}, \tilde{i}, \tilde{w}) \neq (\hat{v}, \hat{i}, \hat{w})$. Then, $(v, i, w) := (\tilde{v}, \tilde{i}, \tilde{w}) - (\hat{v}, \hat{i}, \hat{w})$ is a weak solution initiating from the zero initial condition $(v_0, i_0, i_0', w_0, w_0') = 0$. Now, fix $s \in [0, T]$ and define, for $0 \leq t \leq T$, the functions

$$
p(t) := \int_0^t w(r) \mathrm{d}r, \qquad q(t) := \begin{cases} \int_t^s w(r) \mathrm{d}r & \text{if } 0 \leq t \leq s, \\ 0 & \text{if } s < t \leq T. \end{cases}
\tag{4.32}
$$

Note that $p(t) \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$ and $q(t) \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$ for all $t \in [0, T]$, and hence p and q are regular enough to be used as the test function h_w in (4.4). Moreover, $q(s) = 0$, $q(0) = p(s)$, and $p(0) = 0$. Let $\tilde{u}$ and $\hat{u}$ satisfy (4.2)–(4.4) with the same test functions $\ell_v = v(t)$, $\ell_i = \mathrm{d}_t i(t)$, and $h_w = q(t)$. Subtracting the two sets of equations and integrating over $t \in [0, s]$ yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
\int_0^s \Big[&\langle \Phi \mathrm{d}_t v, v \rangle_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + (v, v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} - (J_1 i, v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\
&+ \Big(J_2 (\tilde{v} \tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v} \hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}}) \Psi J_4 + J_3 (\tilde{v} \tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v} \hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}}) \Psi J_5, v \Big)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \Big] \mathrm{d}t = 0,
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.33}
$$

$$\begin{aligned}(4.34)\quad \int_0^s \Big[\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 i, \mathrm{d}_t i\right\rangle_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + 2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i, \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \left(\Gamma^2 i, \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} - e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \\ -e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}\Big]\mathrm{d}t = 0,\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(4.35)\quad \int_0^s \Big[\left\langle \mathrm{d}_t^2 w, q\right\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + 2\nu\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w, q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x w, \partial_x q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w, q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\ -\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\Big]\mathrm{d}t = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Next, integrating by parts in the first and second terms in (4.35) yields

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^s \Big[-\left(\mathrm{d}_t w, \mathrm{d}_t q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - 2\nu\left(\Lambda w, \mathrm{d}_t q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x w, \partial_x q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w, q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\Big]\mathrm{d}t \\ = \int_0^s \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\mathrm{d}t.\end{aligned}$$

Note that $\langle \mathrm{d}_t w, \mathrm{d}_t q\rangle_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} = (\mathrm{d}_t w, \mathrm{d}_t q)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}$, since $\mathrm{d}_t w \in \mathcal{L}^2_w$ for almost every $t \in [0, T]$; see the proof of [43, Thm. 5.9-1]. Now, it follows from the definition of $q(t)$ that $\mathrm{d}_t q = -w$ for all $t \in [0, s]$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}(4.36)\qquad \int_0^s \left[\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t\left(\|w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\|\partial_x q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}\right) + 2\nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w, q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right]\mathrm{d}t \\ = \int_0^s \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\mathrm{d}t.\end{aligned}$$

Using Young's inequality,

$$\begin{aligned}\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\le \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\|q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left[\sup_{v_{\textsc{e}}(x,t)\in\mathbb{R}}\left|\partial_{v_{\textsc{e}}} f_{\textsc{e}}(v_{\textsc{e}})\right|\right]^2\|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \\ &\le \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\|q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\textsc{e}}}{\sigma^2_{\textsc{e}}}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}, \\ -\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w, q\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\le \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\|q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2\|\Lambda\|^4_2\|w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w},\end{aligned}$$

where the second inequality follows, for $\textsc{x} = \textsc{e}$, from differentiating (3.2) as

$$(4.37)\quad \partial_{v_{\textsc{x}}} f_{\textsc{x}}(v_{\textsc{x}}) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sigma_{\textsc{x}}}\mathrm{F}_{\textsc{x}}\exp\left(-\sqrt{2}\,\frac{v_{\textsc{x}} - \mu_{\textsc{x}}}{\sigma_{\textsc{x}}}\right)\left[1 + \exp\left(-\sqrt{2}\,\frac{v_{\textsc{x}} - \mu_{\textsc{x}}}{\sigma_{\textsc{x}}}\right)\right]^{-2}, \quad \textsc{x} \in \{\textsc{e}, \textsc{i}\},$$

which implies $\sup_{v_{\mathrm{X}}(x,t)\in\mathbb{R}} |\partial_{v_{\mathrm{X}}} f_{\mathrm{X}}(v_{\mathrm{X}})| \leq \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{X}}}{2\sqrt{2}\sigma_{\mathrm{X}}}$.

Now, (4.36) implies

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2}\left\|w(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\left\|q(0)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \leq \int_0^s \bigg[\Big(-2\nu\Lambda_{\min} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\right\|_2^4\Big)\left\|w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{2}\nu^2\left\|q\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\\ + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left\|v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\bigg]\mathrm{d}t + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\left\|q(0)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\end{aligned}$$

where $\Lambda_{\min} := \min\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}\}$ is the smallest eigenvalue of Λ. Noting from (4.32) that $q(t) = p(s) - p(t)$ for all $t \in [0, s]$, it follows that the above inequality can be written as

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{1}{2}\left\|w(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \leq \int_0^s \bigg[\Big(-2\nu\Lambda_{\min} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\right\|_2^4\Big)\left\|w(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\\ + \frac{1}{2}\nu^2\left\|p(s)-p(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\\ + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left\|v(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\bigg]\mathrm{d}t + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}.\end{aligned}$$

Using the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality, it follows from the definition of $p(t)$ given by (4.32) that $\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \leq s\int_0^s \left\|w(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\mathrm{d}t$. Moreover,

$$\left\|p(s)-p(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \leq 2\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + 2\left\|p(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \leq 2\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + 2\left\|p(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}.$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{2}\left\|w(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2(\frac{3}{4} - s)\left\|p(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\\ &\quad\leq \int_0^s \bigg[\Big(-2\nu\Lambda_{\min} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\right\|_2^4 + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2 s\Big)\left\|w(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2\left\|p(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\\ &\qquad + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left\|v(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\bigg]\mathrm{d}t.\end{aligned} \tag{4.38}$$

Next, recalling (4.14) and (4.15) and using the Cauchy–Schwarz and Young inequalities, it follows that the fourth term in (4.33) satisfies, for every $\varepsilon_1 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\Big(J_2(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_4, v\Big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} &= \big(J_2 v\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}}\Psi J_4, v\big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \big(J_2\hat{v}i^{\mathrm{T}}\Psi J_4, v\big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \\ &\geq -\sqrt{2\kappa_{\tilde{i}}}\, \|\Psi\|_2 \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} - \varepsilon_1 \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} - \frac{2\kappa_{\hat{v}}}{4\varepsilon_1} \|\Psi\|_2^2 \|i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i},\end{aligned}$$

where $\kappa_{\hat{v}}$ and $\kappa_{\tilde{i}}$ are in the form of (4.17) and (4.18), respectively. The same inequality holds for $\Big(J_3(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_5, v\Big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}$. Similarly, using Young's inequality and (4.37),

$$\begin{aligned}e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} &\leq \varepsilon_2 \|\mathrm{d}_t i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_2} \|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\|_2^2 \sup_{v(x,t)\in\mathbb{R}^2} \|\partial_v f(v)\|_2^2 \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \\ &\leq \varepsilon_2 \|\mathrm{d}_t i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{e^2}{32\varepsilon_2} \|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\|_2^2 \max\left\{\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}, \frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{I}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{I}}}\right\} \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\end{aligned}$$

for every $\varepsilon_2 > 0$. Moreover, for every $\varepsilon_3 > 0$ and $\varepsilon_4 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}(J_1 i, v)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} &\leq \varepsilon_4 \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \frac{1}{2\varepsilon_4} \|i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}, \\ e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, \mathrm{d}_t i\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} &\leq \varepsilon_4 \|\mathrm{d}_t i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_4} \|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\|_2^2 \|w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}.\end{aligned}$$

Substituting the above inequalities into (4.33) and (4.34), and adding the resulting inequalities to (4.38) yields, for some $\alpha > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v(s)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|\mathrm{d}_t i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|\Gamma i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|w(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \nu^2(\frac{3}{2} - 2s) \|p(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \\ &\qquad \leq \alpha \int_0^s \Big[\|v(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|\mathrm{d}_t i(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|i(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \|p(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\Big]\,\mathrm{d}t.\end{aligned}$$

Now, setting $T_1 = \frac{3}{4}$, it follows from the integral form of Grönwall's inequality [43, App. B.2] that $(v(s), i(s), w(s)) = 0$ for all $s \in [0, T_1]$. Repeating the same arguments for intervals $[T_1, 2T_1]$, $[2T_1, 3T_1]$, …, we deduce $(v(t), i(t), w(t)) = 0$ for all $t \in [0, T]$, and hence $(\tilde{v}, \tilde{i}, \tilde{w}) = (\hat{v}, \hat{i}, \hat{w})$ for all $t \in [0, T]$, which is a contradiction and completes the proof of uniqueness. ■

Proposition 4.6 (Regularity of weak solutions). *Suppose that the assumptions of Theorem 4.5 hold, namely,* $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$, $v_0 \in \mathcal{L}_v^2$, $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$, $i_0' \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$, $w_0 \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$, *and* $w_0' \in \mathcal{L}_w^2$. *Then the* Ω*-periodic weak solution* (v,i,w) *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6) *satisfies*

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\|v(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}\right) + \|\mathrm{d}_t v\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2)} &\le \kappa_v, \\ \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\|\mathrm{d}_t i(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \|i(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}\right) + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 i\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2)} &\le \kappa_i, \\ \operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\|\mathrm{d}_t w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + \|w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}\right) + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}_w^{1*})} &\le \kappa_w, \end{aligned} \tag{4.39}$$

$$\begin{aligned} & v \in H^3(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^2) \cap C^{2,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}_v^2), \\ & i \in H^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2) \cap C^{1,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \quad \mathrm{d}_t i \in H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^2) \cap C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \\ & w \in H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}_w^2) \cap C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}_w^1), \quad \mathrm{d}_t w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}_w^2), \end{aligned} \tag{4.40}$$

where κ_v, κ_i, *and* κ_w *are given by* (4.17)–(4.19). *Moreover, if* $g \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2)$, *then*

$$v \in C^3([0,T];\mathcal{L}_v^2), \quad i \in C^2([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \quad \mathrm{d}_t i \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \tag{4.41}$$

and if $g \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2)$, *then*

$$v \in C^4([0,T];\mathcal{L}_v^2), \quad i \in C^3([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2), \quad \mathrm{d}_t i \in C^2([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^2). \tag{4.42}$$

Proof. First, recall that $\mathcal{L}_v^2 = \mathcal{L}_v^{2*}$ and $\mathcal{L}_i^2 = \mathcal{L}_i^{2*}$. Assertion (4.39) follows immediately from (4.14)–(4.16) by setting $m = m_k$ and passing to the limits through (4.25) and (4.26). The inclusions in H^1, H^2, and H^3 in assertion (4.40) are immediate from (4.39) and twice differentiation of (3.3). The Sobolev embedding theorems [42, Thm. 6.6-1] applied to Banach space-valued functions on $[0,T] \subset \mathbb{R}$ imply that

$v \in C^{2,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_v)$, $i \in C^{1,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_i)$, and $\mathrm{d}_t i \in C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_i)$.

Consider the time-independent self-adjoint linear operator $A := (-\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta + I) : \mathcal{H}^1_w \to \mathcal{H}^{1*}_w$. Note that $f(v) \in C^{2,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$, since f is a bounded smooth function and $v \in C^{2,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_v)$. Then, it follows from (3.5) and (4.39) that $\mathrm{d}_t^2 w + Aw \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w)$. Therefore, by [18, Lem. II.4.1], we have $w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^1_w)$ and $\mathrm{d}_t w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, which completes the proof of (4.40). Assertions (4.41) and (4.42) are now immediate from (3.3), (3.4), and (4.40). ■

Theorem 4.7 (Existence and uniqueness of strong solutions). *Suppose that* $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i)$, $v_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2_v$, $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2_i$, $i'_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2_i$, $w_0 \in \mathcal{H}^2_w$, *and* $w'_0 \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$. *Then there exists a unique* Ω*-periodic strong solution* (v,i,w) *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6).

Proof. Uniqueness follows immediately from Theorem 4.5, since every strong solution of (3.3)–(3.6) is also a weak solution. Moreover, Proposition 4.6 implies that the weak solutions $v \in H^3(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_v)$ and $i \in H^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i)$ are indeed strong solutions as given in Definition 4.3. It remains to prove the regularity required for w by Definition 4.3.

Consider (4.12) with the approximation (4.9), let $\mathcal{B}_w = \left\{h_w^{(k)}\right\}_{k=1}^\infty$ be the orthogonal basis of $\mathcal{H}^1_w$ consisting of the eigenfunctions of $A := -\Delta + I$ as given by Lemma 4.1, and let λ_k denote the eigenvalue corresponding to the eigenfunction $h_w^{(k)}$. Multiplying (4.12) by $\lambda_k c_{w_k}^{(m)}$ and summing over $k = 1, \dots, m$ yields

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + 2\nu\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}, Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x w^{(m)}, A\partial_x w^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \\ + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}, Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Now, Young's inequality implies that, for every $\varepsilon_1, \dots, \varepsilon_4 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}-\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}, Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\le \varepsilon_1 \left\|Aw^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_1}\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}, \\ -\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}, Aw^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\le \varepsilon_2 \left\|Aw^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_2}\left\|\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w},\end{aligned}$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
-\left(\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}, A w^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\leq \varepsilon_3 \left\|A w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_3}\left\|\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w},\\
\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)}), A w^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\leq \varepsilon_4 \left\|A w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^{(m)})\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\\
&\leq \varepsilon_4 \left\|A w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_4}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2).
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, using (2.1),

$$
\begin{aligned}
\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} \leq{}& (\varepsilon_1 + 2\nu\varepsilon_2 + \nu^2\varepsilon_3 + \nu^2\varepsilon_4)\left(\left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} + \left\|\partial_x w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}\right)\\
&+ \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_1}\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{\nu}{2\varepsilon_2}\left\|\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\\
&+ \frac{\nu^2}{4\varepsilon_3}\left\|\Lambda^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{\nu^2}{4\varepsilon_4}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2).
\end{aligned}
$$

Next, set $\varepsilon_1 = \frac{\nu^2}{8}$, $\varepsilon_2 = \frac{\nu}{16}$, $\varepsilon_3 = \frac{1}{8}$, and $\varepsilon_4 = \frac{1}{8}$, and note that, for some $\beta > 0$,

$$
\left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} \leq \beta\left(\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\|w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + |\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\right). \tag{4.43}
$$

Bounds on $\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}$ and $\left\|w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}$ are given by the energy estimate (4.16). To establish bounds on $\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}$ and $\left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}$, consider (4.12) with the initial values given in (4.13). Differentiating (4.12) with respect to t, multiplying the result by $\mathrm{d}_t^2 c^{(m)}_{w_k}$, and summing over $k = 1, \ldots, m$ yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 \dot{w}^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t \dot{w}^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + 2\nu\left(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t \dot{w}^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t \dot{w}^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left(\partial_x \dot{w}^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t \partial_x \dot{w}^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}}\\
&\qquad + \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \dot{w}^{(m)}, \mathrm{d}_t \dot{w}^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8\, \mathrm{d}_t f(v^{(m)}), \mathrm{d}_t \dot{w}^{(m)}\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} = 0,
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\dot{w} := \mathrm{d}_t w$ and $\mathrm{d}_t f_{\mathrm{E}}(v^{(m)}_{\mathrm{E}}) = \partial_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f_{\mathrm{E}}(v^{(m)}_{\mathrm{E}})\,\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}_{\mathrm{E}}$. Now, (4.37) with $\mathrm{X} = \mathrm{E}$ gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left\|\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8\, \mathrm{d}_t f(v^{(m)})\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &= \mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\int_\Omega \left|\mathrm{d}_t f_{\mathrm{E}}(v^{(m)}_{\mathrm{E}})\right|^2 \mathrm{d}x\\
&\leq \mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{8\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}\int_\Omega \left|\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}_{\mathrm{E}}\right|^2 \mathrm{d}x\\
&\leq \mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{8\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}\left\|\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}.
\end{aligned}
\tag{4.44}
$$

Using similar arguments as in the proof of Proposition 4.4, it follows from the above inequality and Young's inequality that, for every $\varepsilon > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\mathrm{d}_t\left[\left\|\mathrm{d}_t\dot{w}^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\partial_x\dot{w}^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\dot{w}^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right] + 2\nu(2\Lambda_{\min} - \varepsilon\nu)\left\|\mathrm{d}_t\dot{w}^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}& \\ \le \frac{\nu^2}{2\varepsilon}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{8\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left\|\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v},&\end{aligned}$$

where $\Lambda_{\min} := \min\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}\}$ is the smallest eigenvalue of Λ. Next, setting $\varepsilon = \frac{2}{\nu}\Lambda_{\min}$, replacing $\dot{w} = \mathrm{d}_t w$, and using Grönwall's inequality yields

$$\begin{aligned}&\left\|\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\mathrm{d}_t\partial_x w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\ &\quad\le \left.\left(\left\|\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\mathrm{d}_t\partial_x w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \nu^2\left\|\Lambda\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right)\right|_{t=0} \\ &\qquad + \frac{1}{32}\frac{\nu^3}{\Lambda_{\min}\sigma^2}\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left\|\mathrm{d}_t v^{(m)}\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_v)}.\end{aligned}\tag{4.45}$$

Finally, it follows from (4.12) and (4.13) that, for some $\alpha_1 > 0$,

$$\left.\left\|\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right|_{t=0} \le \alpha_1\left(\|w'_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|w_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} + \nu^2|\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\right).$$

Now, using the energy estimate (4.14) and the above inequality in (4.45), it follows that

$$\left\|\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \le \alpha_2\left(\|w'_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|w_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} + (|\Omega| + \kappa_v)\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\right)$$

for some $\alpha_2 > 0$ and all $t \in [0, T]$. Since this inequality and (4.43) hold for all $t \in [0, T]$, it follows that

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]}\left(\left\|\mathrm{d}^2_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \left\|w^{(m)}(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w}\right) \le \hat{\beta}_w,\tag{4.46}$$

where

$$\hat{\beta}_w := \alpha \left(\|w_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|w_0\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} + (|\Omega| + \kappa_v)\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}} \right)$$

for some $\alpha > 0$. Now, using the above estimate and passing to the limits, the result follows by similar arguments as in the proof of Theorem 4.5. ■

Proposition 4.8 (Regularity of strong solutions). *Suppose that the assumptions of Theorem 4.7 hold, namely,* $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_i)$, $v_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2_v$, $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}^2_i$, $i_0' \in \mathcal{L}^2_i$, $w_0 \in \mathcal{H}^2_w$, *and* $w_0' \in \mathcal{H}^1_w$. *Then, in addition to the properties of the weak solution given in Proposition 4.6, the* Ω*-periodic strong solution* (v,i,w) *of the initial value problem* (3.3)–(3.6) *satisfies*

$$\operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 w(t)\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \|\mathrm{d}_t w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} \right) + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t^3 w\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^{1*}_w)} \le \beta_w, \tag{4.47}$$

$$\begin{aligned} w &\in H^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w) \cap H^1(0,T;\mathcal{H}^1_w) \cap C^{1,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w) \cap C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{H}^1_w) \\ &\qquad \cap C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^2_w) \cap C^0([0,T];C^{0,\lambda}_{\mathrm{per}}(\overline{\Omega},\mathbb{R}^2)), \\ \mathrm{d}_t w &\in H^1(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w) \cap C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w) \cap C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^1_w), \\ \mathrm{d}_t^2 w &\in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w) \end{aligned} \tag{4.48}$$

for all $\lambda \in (0,1)$ *and some* $\beta_w > 0$.

Proof. Differentiate (4.12) with respect to t and denote $\dot{w} := \mathrm{d}_t w$. Use (4.44) and follow the same steps used to prove (4.16) in Proposition 4.4 to show $\left\|\mathrm{d}_t^2 \dot{w}^{(m)}\right\|^2_{L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}^{1*}_w)} \le \tilde{\beta}_w$ for every positive integer m, all $t \in [0,T]$, and some $\tilde{\beta}_w > 0$ proportional to $\hat{\beta}_w$ in (4.46). Replacing $\dot{w} = \mathrm{d}_t w$, adding the result to (4.46), and passing to the limits establishes (4.47) for some $\beta_w > 0$ proportional to $\hat{\beta}_w$.

The inclusions in H^1 and H^2 in assertion (4.48) follow immediately from (4.47).

The inclusions in the Hölder spaces $C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}$ and $C^{1,\frac{1}{2}}$ are implied by the Sobolev embedding theorems [42, Thm. 6.6-1] applied to Banach space-valued functions on $[0,T] \subset \mathbb{R}$.

To show $\mathrm{d}_t w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^1_w)$ and $\mathrm{d}_t^2 w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, consider the time-independent self-adjoint linear operator $A := (-\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta + I) : \mathcal{H}^1_w \to \mathcal{H}^{1*}_w$. Differentiate (3.5) with respect to t and denote $\dot{w} := \mathrm{d}_t w$. Note that $\mathrm{d}_t f(v) \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$, since $\partial_v f$ is a bounded smooth function and $\mathrm{d}_t v \in C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_v)$, given by Proposition 4.6. Then, it follows from (3.5) and (4.47) that $\mathrm{d}_t^2 \dot{w} + A\dot{w} \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{L}^2_w)$. Therefore, by [18, Lem. II.4.1], we have $\dot{w} \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^1_w)$ and $\mathrm{d}_t \dot{w} \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$.

Next, noting that $f(v) \in C^2([0,T];\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$, $w \in C^{1,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, $\mathrm{d}_t w \in C^{0,\frac{1}{2}}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, and $\mathrm{d}_t^2 w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, it follows from (3.5) that $(-\Delta + I)w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_w)$, and hence $w \in C^0([0,T];\mathcal{H}^2_w)$. Using the Sobolev embedding theorems applied to Ω-periodic functions in $\mathbb{R}^2$, this further implies that $w \in C^0([0,T];C^{0,\lambda}_{\mathrm{per}}(\overline{\Omega},\mathbb{R}^2))$. ■

Other than the regularity properties given in Propositions 4.6 and 4.8, boundedness of weak and strong solutions associated with bounded input functions g can also be established. We defer this result to Chapter 5, as a corollary of Proposition 5.3.

In the remainder of the dissertation, as suggested in [20, sect. 11.1.2], we give formal arguments for some of the proofs, in the sense that we take the inner product of (3.5) with functions that belong to $\mathcal{L}^2_w$, instead of functions belonging to $\mathcal{H}^1_w$ as required for the test functions h_w in (4.4). However, the proofs can be made rigorous using the Galerkin approximation technique based on the dual orthogonal basis of $\mathcal{H}^1_w \Subset \mathcal{L}^2_w$ and then passing to the limits, as in the proofs of Theorems 4.5 and 4.7. See the discussion and results in [20, sect. 11.1.2] for further details.

CHAPTER 5

SEMIDYNAMICAL SYSTEMS AND BIOPHYSICAL PLAUSIBILITY OF THE EVOLUTION

In this chapter, we establish a semidynamical system framework for the initial value problem presented in Chapter 4. Assume $g \in L^2(0,\infty;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$ and let $u(t) := (v(t), i(t), \mathrm{d}_t i(t), w(t), \mathrm{d}_t w(t))$ denote a solution of (3.3)–(3.5) with the initial value $u_0 := u(0) = (v_0, i_0, i'_0, w_0, w'_0)$. Recall Definitions 4.2 and 4.3 and the results of Theorems 4.5 and 4.7 to note that the Hilbert spaces

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}} &:= \mathcal{L}_v^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2 \times \mathcal{H}_w^1 \times \mathcal{L}_w^2, \\ \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}} &:= \mathcal{L}_v^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2 \times \mathcal{H}_w^2 \times \mathcal{H}_w^1 \end{aligned} \tag{5.1}$$

construct, respectively, the phase spaces associated with the weak and strong solutions. Now, for every $t \in [0,\infty)$, define the mappings

$$\begin{aligned} &S_{\mathrm{w}}(t) : \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}} \to \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}, \quad S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)u_0 := u(t), \\ &S_{\mathrm{s}}(t) : \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}} \to \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}, \qquad S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)u_0 := u(t). \end{aligned}$$

The existence and uniqueness of solutions given by Theorems 4.5 and 4.7 along with the time-continuity of solutions given by Propositions 4.6 and 4.8 imply that the above mappings are well defined for all $t \in [0,\infty)$. Then, $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ form semigroups of operators which give the weak and strong solutions of (3.1), respectively. The following propositions show that these semigroups are continuous, which also ensures that the initial value problems of finding weak and strong solutions for (3.1) are well-posed.

Proposition 5.1 (Continuity of the semigroup $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}\}$). *The semigroup of weak solution operators* $\big\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\big\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *is continuous for all* $g \in L^2(0,\infty;\mathcal{L}_i^2)$.

Proof. Continuity of the semigroup with respect to t follows immediately from the continuity of the weak solutions given in Proposition 4.6. It remains to prove continuous dependence of the solution on the initial values. Let $\tilde{u}_0$ and $\hat{u}_0$ be any two initial values in $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$ that give the solutions $\tilde{u}(t) = S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\tilde{u}_0$ and $\hat{u}(t) = S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\hat{u}_0$ for all $t \in [0,T]$, $T > 0$. Let $u(t) := \tilde{u}(t) - \hat{u}(t)$ be the weak solution with the initial value $u_0 := \tilde{u}_0 - \hat{u}_0$. Now, consider (3.3)–(3.5) satisfied by $\tilde{u}$ and $\hat{u}$, and take the inner product of (3.3)–(3.5) in each set with v, $\mathrm{d}_t i$, and $\mathrm{d}_t w$, respectively. Subtracting the resulting two sets of equations yields

$$\begin{aligned}(5.2)\qquad & (\Phi \mathrm{d}_t v, v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + (v,v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} - (J_1 i, v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} \\ &\qquad + \Big(J_2(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_4 + J_3(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_5, v\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} = 0,\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(5.3)\qquad & \big(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i, \mathrm{d}_t i\big)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + 2\,(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i, \mathrm{d}_t i)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} + \big(\Gamma^2 i, \mathrm{d}_t i\big)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} - e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, \mathrm{d}_t i)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} \\ &\qquad - e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t i)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} = 0,\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}(5.4)\qquad & \big(\mathrm{d}_t^2 w, \mathrm{d}_t w\big)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + 2\nu\,(\Lambda \mathrm{d}_t w, \mathrm{d}_t w)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\,(\partial_x w, \mathrm{d}_t \partial_x w)_{\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2} \\ &\qquad + \nu^2\,\big(\Lambda^2 w, \mathrm{d}_t w\big)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} - \nu^2\,\big(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t w\big)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} = 0.\end{aligned}$$

As in the proof of uniqueness given in Theorem 4.5,

$$\begin{aligned}
-\Big(J_2(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_4, v\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &\le \sqrt{2\kappa_{\tilde{i}}}\;\|\Psi\|_2\,\|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\kappa_{\hat{v}}\,\|\Psi\|_2^2\,\|i\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\,,\\
-\Big(J_3(\tilde{v}\tilde{i}^{\mathrm{T}} - \hat{v}\hat{i}^{\mathrm{T}})\Psi J_5, v\Big)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &\le \sqrt{2\kappa_{\tilde{i}}}\;\|\Psi\|_2\,\|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\kappa_{\hat{v}}\,\|\Psi\|_2^2\,\|i\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\,,\\
e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t i)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\le \|\mathrm{d}_t i\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{1}{32}e^2\,\|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N}J_7\|_2^2 \max\left\{\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}, \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{I}}^2}\right\}\|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2\,,\\
\nu^2\,\big(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_t w\big)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} &\le \nu^2\,\|\mathrm{d}_t w\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 + \frac{1}{32}\nu^2\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}\;\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\,\|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2\,,\\
(J_1 i, v)_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} &\le \|v\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\,\|i\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\,,\\
e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, \mathrm{d}_t i)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\le \|\mathrm{d}_t i\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{1}{4}e^2\,\|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\|_2^2\,\|w\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2\,,
\end{aligned}$$

where $\kappa_{\hat{v}}$ and $\kappa_{\tilde{i}}$ are in the form of (4.17) and (4.18). Now, substituting the above inequalities into (5.2)–(5.4), adding the resulting inequalities together, and using Grönwall's inequality yield, for some $\alpha, \beta > 0$,

$$\|u(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \leq \beta e^{\alpha T} \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \quad \text{for all } t \in [0, T], \tag{5.5}$$

which completes the proof. ■

Proposition 5.2 (Continuity of the semigroup $\{S_\mathrm{s}\}$). *The semigroup of strong solution operators* $\{S_\mathrm{s}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *is continuous for all* $g \in L^2(0, \infty; \mathcal{L}^2_i)$.

Proof. Continuity of the semigroup with respect to t follows immediately from the time continuity of the strong solutions given by Proposition 4.8. To prove continuous dependence on the initial values, consider any two initial values $\tilde{u}_0$ and $\hat{u}_0$ in $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}$ and construct the solutions $\tilde{u}(t) = S_\mathrm{s}(t)\tilde{u}_0$ and $\hat{u}(t) = S_\mathrm{s}(t)\hat{u}_0$, $t \in [0, T]$, $T > 0$, for (3.3)–(3.5). Let $u := \tilde{u} - \hat{u}$ and $A := -\Delta + I$, and take the inner product of (3.3)–(3.5) for each solution with v, $\mathrm{d}_t i$, and $A\mathrm{d}_t w$, respectively. Subtracting the resulting two sets of equations gives (5.2), (5.3), and

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t \|\mathrm{d}_t w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + 2\nu \left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\mathrm{d}_t w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2 \mathrm{d}_t \|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_{\partial w}} + \frac{1}{2}\nu^2 \mathrm{d}_t \|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} \\ = \nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), A\mathrm{d}_t w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}. \end{aligned} \tag{5.6}$$

Note that (5.5) also holds since $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s} \subset \mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}$, and since (5.2) and (5.3) remain unchanged, the continuity of v and i holds.

Now, it follows from (5.6) by integrating over $[0, t]$ that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\mathrm{d}_t w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} &+ \nu^2 \left[\frac{3}{2}\|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_{\partial w}} + \|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\right] \\ &\leq \left(\|\mathrm{d}_t w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \nu^2 \left[\frac{3}{2}\|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_{\partial w}} + \|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}\right]\right)\bigg|_{t=0} \\ &\quad + 2\nu^2 \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), A\mathrm{d}_s w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s, \end{aligned}$$

which, using (2.1), can be written equivalently for some $\alpha_1, \beta_1 > 0$ as

$$
\begin{aligned}
(5.7) \qquad Q(w(t), \mathrm{d}_t w(t)) &\leq \alpha_1 Q(w(0), \mathrm{d}_t w(0)) \\
&\quad + \beta_1 \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), A \mathrm{d}_s w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s,
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
(5.8) \qquad Q(w(t), \mathrm{d}_t w(t)) := \|\mathrm{d}_t w(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|Aw(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}.
$$

Integrating by parts in the second term of the right-hand side of (5.7) yields

$$
\begin{aligned}
(5.9) \qquad \beta_1 \int_0^t & \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), A \mathrm{d}_s w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s \\
&= \beta_1 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\quad - \beta_1 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}_0) - f(\hat{v}_0)), Aw_0\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\quad - \beta_1 \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \mathrm{d}_s(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s.
\end{aligned}
$$

Next, recalling that $\sup_{v_{\mathrm{X}}(x,t) \in \mathbb{R}} |\partial_{v_{\mathrm{X}}} f_{\mathrm{X}}(v_{\mathrm{X}})| \leq \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{X}}}{2\sqrt{2}\sigma_{\mathrm{X}}}$ by (4.37) and using Young's inequality, we obtain

$$
\begin{aligned}
(5.10) \qquad \beta_1 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\leq \frac{1}{2} \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{\beta_1^2}{16} \frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}} \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}, \\
-\beta_1 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}_0) - f(\hat{v}_0)), Aw_0\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} &\leq \frac{1}{2} \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{\beta_1^2}{16} \frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}} \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \|v_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}.
\end{aligned}
$$

Moreover,

$$
\begin{aligned}
- \beta_1 & \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \mathrm{d}_s(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&= -\beta_1 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(\partial_{\tilde{v}} f(\tilde{v}) \mathrm{d}_s \tilde{v} - \partial_{\hat{v}} f(\hat{v}) \mathrm{d}_s \hat{v}), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\leq \frac{1}{2} \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{2} \beta_1^2 \left\|\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(\partial_{\tilde{v}} f(\tilde{v}) \mathrm{d}_s \tilde{v} - \partial_{\hat{v}} f(\hat{v}) \mathrm{d}_s \hat{v})\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{2} \beta_1^2 \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \int_\Omega |\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) \mathrm{d}_s \tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}} - \partial_{\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) \mathrm{d}_s \hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 \, \mathrm{d}x,
\end{aligned}
$$

where, noting that $\sup_{v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\in\mathbb{R}} |\partial^2_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f_{\mathrm{E}}(v_{\mathrm{E}})| < \frac{1}{5}\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}$ by direct computation of the derivative of (4.37), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}
&|\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}})\mathrm{d}_s\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}} - \partial_{\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}})\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2\mathrm{d}x \\
&\qquad = |\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}})\mathrm{d}_s v_{\mathrm{E}} + (\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) - \partial_{\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}))\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 \\
&\qquad \le 2|\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}})|^2|\mathrm{d}_s v_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 + 2|\partial_{\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\tilde{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) - \partial_{\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}})|^2|\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 \\
&\qquad \le \frac{1}{4}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}|\mathrm{d}_s v_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 + 2\left[\sup_{v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t)\in\mathbb{R}} |\partial^2_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f_{\mathrm{E}}(v_{\mathrm{E}})|\right]^2 |v_{\mathrm{E}}|^2|\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 \\
&\qquad \le \frac{1}{4}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}|\mathrm{d}_s v_{\mathrm{E}}|^2 + \frac{2}{25}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^4_{\mathrm{E}}}|v_{\mathrm{E}}|^2|\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}_{\mathrm{E}}|^2.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
(5.11)\qquad & -\beta_1\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8\mathrm{d}_s(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\qquad \le \frac{1}{2}\|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{\beta_1^2}{8}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^2_{\mathrm{E}}}\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\|\mathrm{d}_s v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \\
&\qquad\quad + \frac{\beta_1^2}{25}\frac{\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}}{\sigma^4_{\mathrm{E}}}\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\|\mathrm{d}_s\hat{v}\|^2_{C^1([0,T];\mathcal{L}^2_v)}\|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}.
\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, (3.3) implies that, for some $\alpha_2 > 0$,

$$(5.12)\qquad \|\mathrm{d}_s v(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \le \alpha_2\left(\|v(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|v(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\|i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}\right) \quad \text{for all } s \in [0,T].$$

Now, substituting (5.10), (5.11), and (5.12) into (5.9) and using (5.5), it follows that there exist some $\beta_2, \dots, \beta_6 > 0$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}
&\beta_1 \int_0^t \big(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8(f(\tilde{v}) - f(\hat{v})), \mathrm{d}_s A w\big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s \\
&\quad \le \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s + \beta_2 \int_0^t \Big(\|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \|i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \Big) \mathrm{d}s \\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta_3 \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta_4 \|v_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \\
&\quad \le \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \mathrm{d}s + \beta_5 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \big(1 + \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}}\big) t \\
&\qquad + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta_6 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} .
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this inequality into (5.7) yields

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} Q(w(t), \mathrm{d}_t w(t)) &\le \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t Q(w(s), \mathrm{d}_s w(s)) \mathrm{d}s + \beta_5 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \big(1 + \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}}\big) t \\
&\quad + \alpha_1 Q(w(0), \mathrm{d}_t w(0)) + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta_6 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} ,
\end{aligned} \tag{5.13}$$

where, using Grönwall's inequality for the function $\frac{1}{2}\int_0^t Q(w(s), \mathrm{d}_s w(s)) \mathrm{d}s$, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2} \int_0^t Q(w(s), \mathrm{d}_s w(s)) \mathrm{d}s &\le \beta_5 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \big(1 + \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}}\big) \big(e^t - (t+1)\big) \\
&\quad + \left[\alpha_1 Q(w(0), \mathrm{d}_t w(0)) + \frac{1}{2} \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta_6 \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \right] \big(e^t - 1\big).
\end{aligned}$$

This inequality, along with (5.13) and the definition of Q given by (5.8), implies that, for some $\beta_7 > 0$,

$$Q(w(t), \mathrm{d}_t w(t)) \le \beta_7 e^T \left[Q(w(0), \mathrm{d}_t w(0)) + \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}} \big(1 + \|u_0\|^2_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}}\big) \right] \quad \text{for all } t \in [0, T].$$

Now, noting that $Q(w(0), \mathrm{d}_t w(0)) = \|w_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \|Aw_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}$, it follows from the above inequality and (5.5) that, for some $\hat{\alpha}, \hat{\beta} > 0$,

$$\|u(t)\|_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}}^2 \leq \hat{\beta} e^{\hat{\alpha} T} \|u_0\|_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}}^2 \left(1 + \|u_0\|_{\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}}^2\right) \quad \text{for all } t \in [0, T],$$

which completes the proof. ■

Although the spaces $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}$ and $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}$ constructed in (5.1) provide the theoretical phase spaces of the problem for the solutions constructed in Chapter 4, the evolution of the dynamics of the model is not biophysically plausible on the entire spaces $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}$ and $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}$. As described in Chapter 3, $i(x,t)$, $w(x,t)$, and $g(x,t)$ represent nonnegative biophysical quantities. In fact, initial functions $i_0' \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$ and $w_0' \in \mathcal{L}_w^2$ can be constructed such that the solutions $i(x,t)$ and $w(x,t)$, despite starting from nonnegative initial values $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}_i^2$ and $w_0 \in \mathcal{H}_w^1$, take negative values over a set $\mathscr{X} \subset \Omega$ of positive measure for a time interval of positive length. In the following propositions, we establish conditions under which the dynamics of the model is guaranteed to evolve in biophysically plausible subsets of $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{w}$ and $\mathcal{U}_\mathrm{s}$.

Proposition 5.3 (Nonnegativity of the solution $w(x,t)$). *Suppose that* $w \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{H}_w^1)$ *is the* w*-component of an* Ω*-periodic weak solution* $u(t) = S_\mathrm{w}(t)u_0$ *of* (3.3)–(3.6) *and define the set* $\mathcal{D}_w \subset \mathcal{H}_w^1 \times \mathcal{L}_w^2$ *as*

$$\begin{aligned}(5.14)\quad \mathcal{D}_w := \big\{&(w_0, w_0') \in \mathcal{W}_w^{1,\infty} \times \mathcal{L}_w^\infty : w_0' + \nu\Lambda w_0 \geq 0 \text{ a.e. in } \Omega, \\ &\text{and } w_0(y) + \partial_y w_0(y)(y - x) \geq 0 \text{ for almost every } x \in \Omega, y \in B(x,t), t \in (0,T]\big\}.\end{aligned}$$

Then, for every initial value $(w_0, w_0') \in \mathcal{D}_w$*, the solution* $w(x,t)$ *remains nonnegative almost everywhere in* Ω *for all* $t \in (0,T]$.

Proof. First, note that the weak and strong solutions coincide for $v(t)$ and they satisfy (3.3) and (3.4) almost everywhere in Ω for all $t \in [0,T]$, $T > 0$; see the proof of Theorem 4.7. Substituting $v(t)$ into f, we can interpret $f(v)$ in (3.5) as a function $\hat{f}(x,t) := f(v(x,t))$ for almost every $x \in \Omega$ and all $t \in [0,T]$. Next, using (3.2), (3.7), and Proposition 4.6, it is implied that $\hat{f} \in L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$ and $\hat{f} > 0$ in $\Omega \times [0,T]$. Now, replace $f(v)$ in (3.5) by $\hat{f}$ and scale x by the factor $\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}\nu}$ to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &\partial_t^2 \tilde{w} + 2\nu\Lambda\partial_t\tilde{w} - \Delta\tilde{w} + \nu^2\Lambda^2\tilde{w} - \tilde{f} = 0 && \text{in } \tilde{\Omega} \times (0,T], \\ &\tilde{w} = \tilde{w}_0, \quad \partial_t\tilde{w} = \tilde{w}_0' && \text{on } \tilde{\Omega} \times \{0\}, \end{aligned}$$

where $\tilde{\Omega} := \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}\nu}\Omega$, and $\tilde{w}$, $\tilde{w}_0$, $\tilde{w}_0'$, and $\tilde{f}$ denote w, w_0, w_0', and $\nu^2\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \hat{f}$ in the scaled domain $\tilde{\Omega}$, respectively. Note that, with the new interpretation of f, the above equation is a system of two decoupled telegraph equations. Therefore, applying the same arguments to each of the two equations independently, in what follows we assume without loss of generality that the above equation is a scalar equation.

Using the change of variable $q := e^{\nu\Lambda t}\tilde{w}$, the problem can be transformed to the initial value problem of the standard wave equation given by

$$\begin{aligned} &\partial_t^2 q - \Delta q = e^{\nu\Lambda t}\tilde{f} && \text{in } \mathbb{R}^2 \times (0,T], \\ &q = \tilde{w}_0, \quad \partial_t q = \tilde{w}_0' + \nu\Lambda\tilde{w}_0 && \text{on } \mathbb{R}^2 \times \{0\}. \end{aligned} \tag{5.15}$$

Here, the extension from $\tilde{\Omega}$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$ is done periodically due to the $\tilde{\Omega}$-periodicity of the functions. Let $\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}$, $\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}'$, and $\tilde{f}_\varepsilon$ denote, respectively, $\tilde{w}_0$, $\tilde{w}_0'$, and $\tilde{f}$ after mollification by the standard positive mollifier $\phi_\varepsilon \in C_{\mathrm{c}}^\infty(\mathbb{R}^2)$; see [42, sect. 2.6]. Using Poisson's formula for the homogeneous wave equation in $\mathbb{R}^2$, along with Duhamel's principle for the nonhomogeneous problem [43, sect. 2.4], it follows that the function

$$\begin{aligned} q_\varepsilon(x,t) := {} & \frac{1}{2} \fint_{B(x,t)} \frac{t\big[\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y) + (\partial_y \tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y), y - x)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big] + t^2\big[\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}'(y) + \nu\Lambda\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y)\big]}{\big[t^2 - \|y - x\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2\big]^{\frac{1}{2}}}\, \mathrm{d}y \\ & + \frac{1}{2}\int_0^t (t-s)^2 e^{\nu\Lambda s} \fint_{B(x,t-s)} \frac{\tilde{f}_\varepsilon(y,s)}{\big[(t-s)^2 - \|y - x\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2\big]^{\frac{1}{2}}}\, \mathrm{d}y\, \mathrm{d}s \end{aligned} \tag{5.16}$$

solves (5.15) classically for the forcing term $e^{\nu\Lambda t}\tilde{f}_\varepsilon$ and initial values $\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}$ and $\tilde{w}'_{0\varepsilon}$.

The second term in this solution is nonnegative for all $t \in [0,T]$, since $\tilde{f}$ and consequently $\tilde{f}_\varepsilon$ are nonnegative on $B(x,t)$ for all $x \in \Omega$ and all $t \in [0,T]$. Moreover, by [42, Thm. 2.6-1] and the definition of the weak derivative, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}
(\partial_y \tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y), y-x)_{\mathbb{R}^2} &= \left(\int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \partial_y \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\tilde{w}_0(z)\mathrm{d}z\,,\, y-x \right)_{\mathbb{R}^2} \\
&= \left(-\int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \partial_z \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\tilde{w}_0(z)\mathrm{d}z\,,\, y-x \right)_{\mathbb{R}^2} \\
&= \left(\int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\partial_z\tilde{w}_0(z)\mathrm{d}z\,,\, y-x \right)_{\mathbb{R}^2} \\
&= \int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\,(\partial_z\tilde{w}_0(z), z-x)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\,\mathrm{d}z \\
&\quad + \int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\,(\partial_z\tilde{w}_0(z), y-z)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\,\mathrm{d}z,
\end{aligned}$$

where, using Hölder's inequality and the property $\int_{B(0,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(x)\mathrm{d}x = 1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\left| \int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\,(\partial_z\tilde{w}_0(z), y-z)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\,\mathrm{d}z \right| &\leq \|\partial_x \tilde{w}_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_{\partial w}} \int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\,\|y-z\|_1\,\mathrm{d}z \\
&\leq \sqrt{2}\,\|\partial_x \tilde{w}_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_{\partial w}}\,\varepsilon.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
&\fint_{B(x,t)} \frac{t\big[\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y) + (\partial_y\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y), y-x)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big]}{\big[t^2 - \|y-x\|^2_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big]^{\frac{1}{2}}}\,\mathrm{d}y \\
&\qquad \geq \fint_{B(x,t)} t \left[\frac{\int_{B(y,\varepsilon)} \phi_\varepsilon(y-z)\big[\tilde{w}_0(z) + (\partial_z\tilde{w}_0(z), z-x)_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big]\mathrm{d}z}{\big[t^2 - \|y-x\|^2_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big]^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right. \\
&\qquad\qquad \left. - \frac{\sqrt{2}\,\|\partial_x w_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_{\partial w}}\,\varepsilon}{\big[t^2 - \|y-x\|^2_{\mathbb{R}^2}\big]^{\frac{1}{2}}} \right] \mathrm{d}y \\
&\qquad \geq -\sqrt{2}\,\|\partial_x\tilde{w}_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_{\partial w}}\,\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } (\tilde{w}_0, \tilde{w}'_0) \in \tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w,
\end{aligned}$$

where $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w$ denotes $\mathcal{D}_w$ in the scaled domain $\tilde{\Omega}$. Note that the last inequality holds since the first term in the integration on the right-hand side is nonnegative by (5.14), and $t\big[t^2 - \|y-x\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2\big]^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ takes the average value 1 over the ball $B(x,t)$. Finally, note that $\tilde{w}'_{0\varepsilon}(y) + \nu\Lambda\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon}(y)$ in (5.16) is nonnegative on $B(x,t)$ when $(\tilde{w}_0, \tilde{w}'_0) \in \tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w$. Therefore, it follows that

$$q_\varepsilon(x,t) \geq -\sqrt{2}\,\|\partial_x \tilde{w}_0\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_{\partial w}}\,\varepsilon \quad \text{for all } (\tilde{w}_0, \tilde{w}'_0) \in \tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w. \tag{5.17}$$

Now, taking the limits as $\varepsilon \to 0$, it follows from [42, Thm. 2.6-3] that $\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon} \to \tilde{w}_0$, $\tilde{w}'_{0\varepsilon} \to \tilde{w}'_0$, and $\tilde{f}_\varepsilon \to \tilde{f}$ in $L^2(\tilde{\Omega}_t)$, where $\tilde{\Omega}_t := \{y \in \mathbb{R}^2 : y \in B(x,t), x \in \Omega\}$. Therefore, there exists a subsequence $\{\varepsilon_n\}_{n=1}^\infty$, convergent to 0, such that $\tilde{w}_{0\varepsilon_n} \to \tilde{w}_0$, $\tilde{w}'_{0\varepsilon_n} \to \tilde{w}'_0$, and $\tilde{f}_{\varepsilon_n} \to \tilde{f}$ almost everywhere on Ω_t as $n \to \infty$ [50, Thm. 2.30]. Moreover, since $(\tilde{w}_0, \tilde{w}'_0) \in \mathcal{W}^{1,\infty}_w \times \mathcal{L}^\infty_w$ in $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w$, $\tilde{f} \in L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$, and the function $\big[t^2 - \|y-x\|_{\mathbb{R}^2}^2\big]^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ is integrable over $B(x,t)$, it follows that the integrands in (5.16) are uniformly bounded with respect to ε by integrable functions over $B(x,t)$. Lebesgue's dominated convergence theorem then implies that $q(x,t) := \lim_{n\to\infty} q_{\varepsilon_n}(x,t)$ exists on $\tilde{\Omega}_t$ and, by uniqueness of the weak solution, is a weak solution of the wave equation (5.15). Now, letting $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_n \to 0$ in (5.17), it follows that if $(\tilde{w}_0, \tilde{w}'_0) \in \tilde{\mathcal{D}}_w$, then $q(x,t) \geq 0$ for almost every $x \in \tilde{\Omega}$ and all $t \in (0,T]$. This completes the proof, since the change of variable $\tilde{w} = e^{-\nu\Lambda t} q$ and space rescaling $\Omega = \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}\nu^{-1}\tilde{\Omega}$ do not change the sign of solutions. ■

Corollary 5.4 (Boundedness of the weak solutions). *Suppose* $g \in L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_i)$, $v_0 \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_v$, $i_0 \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_i$, $i'_0 \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_i$, $w_0 \in \mathcal{W}^{1,\infty}_w$, *and* $w'_0 \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_w$. *Then, in addition to the regularities given by Proposition 4.6, the weak solution* $(v(t), i(t), w(t))$ *of*

(3.3)–(3.6) *satisfies*

$$\begin{aligned} v &\in W^{2,\infty}(0,T;\mathcal{L}_v^\infty) \cap C^{1,1}([0,T];\mathcal{L}_v^\infty), \\ i &\in W^{1,\infty}(0,T;\mathcal{L}_i^\infty) \cap C^{0,1}([0,T];\mathcal{L}_i^\infty), \\ w &\in L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}_w^\infty). \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The boundedness of w follows immediately from the proof of Proposition 5.3, since under the assumption $w_0 \in \mathcal{W}_w^{1,\infty}$ and $w_0' \in \mathcal{L}_w^\infty$ the integrands in (5.16) are integrable and each component of the weak solution $w(t)$ is achieved almost everywhere in Ω as the limit of (5.16) when $\varepsilon \to 0$, followed by the space rescaling from $\tilde{\Omega}$ to Ω.

Now, to prove boundedness of v, i, and $\mathrm{d}_t i$, let $x_0 \in \Omega$ be any Lebesgue point[1] of the initial functions v_0, i_0, i_0', w_0, and $g(0)$. Take the $\mathbb{R}^4$-inner product of (3.4) at x_0 with $\mathrm{d}_t i(x_0,t)$ for every $t \in (0,T]$ to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} &\left(\mathrm{d}_t^2 i_{x_0}, \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4} + 2\left(\Gamma \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}, \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4} + \left(\Gamma^2 i_{x_0}, \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4} \\ &\qquad - e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w_{x_0}, \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4} - e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v_{x_0}), \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4} = e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma g_{x_0}, \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}\right)_{\mathbb{R}^4}, \end{aligned}$$

where $v_{x_0}(t) := v(x_0,t)$, $i_{x_0}(t) := i(x_0,t)$, $w_{x_0}(t) := w(x_0,t)$, and $g_{x_0}(t) := g(x_0,t)$. This equality is similar to (4.21) in the proof of Proposition 4.4, with the $\mathcal{L}_i^2$-inner product being replaced by the $\mathbb{R}^4$-inner product, and $v^{(m)}$, $i^{(m)}$, and $w^{(m)}$ being replaced by v_{x_0}, i_{x_0}, and w_{x_0}, respectively. Therefore, similar arguments as in the proof of Proposition 4.4 imply that

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\|\mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}(t)\|_{\mathbb{R}^4}^2 + \|i_{x_0}(t)\|_{\mathbb{R}^4}^2\right) \le \kappa_i, \tag{5.18}$$

---

[1] The choice of a Lebesgue point is for the sake of definiteness. Almost every point in Ω can be used as x_0.

where, with $\kappa_w := \|w\|^2_{L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_w)}$ and for some $\alpha_1 > 0$ independent of x_0,

$$\kappa_i = \alpha_1 \Bigg(\|i_0'\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_i} + \|i_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_i} + \left[\frac{e^2 \kappa_w}{\gamma_{\min}} \|\Upsilon\Gamma J_6\|_2^2 + \frac{e^2|\Omega|}{\gamma_{\min}} (\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2) \|\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N} J_7\|_2^2 \right] T \\ + \frac{e^2}{2\gamma_{\min}} \|\Upsilon\Gamma\|_2^2 \|g\|^2_{L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_i)} \Bigg),$$

and $\gamma_{\min}$ is the smallest eigenvalue of Γ.

Similarly, taking the $\mathbb{R}^2$-inner product of (3.3) at x_0 with $v_{x_0}(t)$ and using the arguments following (4.23) in the proof of Proposition 4.4 yields

$$\sup_{t\in[0,T]} \left(\|v_{x_0}(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \right) \leq \kappa_v, \tag{5.19}$$

where, for some $\alpha_2, \beta > 0$ independent of x_0,

$$\kappa_v = \alpha_2 \exp\left(\beta\sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2\, T\right) \left(\|v_0\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_v} + \frac{\kappa_i}{\sqrt{2\kappa_i}\, \|\Psi\|_2} \right).$$

Now, note that almost every point $x_0 \in \Omega$ is a Lebesgue point for the locally integrable initial functions, and the estimates κ_v and κ_i are independent of x_0. Therefore, taking the supremum over all Lebesgue points $x_0 \in \Omega$ in (5.18) and (5.19) implies $v \in L^\infty(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$ and $i \in W^{1,\infty}(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_i)$, which, recalling (3.3), further imply $v \in W^{2,\infty}(0,T;\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$. Finally, it follows by using Morrey's inequality [43, Thm. 5.6-4 and Thm. 5.6-5] that $v \in C^{1,1}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^\infty_v)$ and $i \in C^{0,1}([0,T];\mathcal{L}^\infty_i)$, which completes the proof. ■

Next, we recall and use the following standard result in the theory of ODEs to establish conditions that guarantee nonnegativity of $i(x,t)$ for all biophysically plausible values of the input g, that is, for all $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{D}_g)$, where

$$\mathcal{D}_g := \left\{ \ell \in \mathcal{L}^2_i : \ell \geq 0 \text{ a.e. in } \Omega \right\}. \tag{5.20}$$

Proposition 5.5 (Invariance of the nonnegative cone [19, Prop. I.1.1]). *Let* $\big\{S(t)\big\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *be the semigroup of solution operators associated with the ODE*

$$\mathrm{d}_t q(t) = P(q(t)), \quad q(t) \in \mathbb{R}^n, \quad t \in [0,\infty),$$

where $P : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ *is a continuous locally Lipschitz mapping. Then the nonnegative cone* $\mathbb{R}^n_+$ *is invariant for* $\big\{S(t)\big\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *if and only if* $P(q)$ *is quasi-positive, that is, for every* $j \in \{1,\dots,n\}$*,*

$$P_j(q_1,\dots,q_n) \geq 0 \textit{ whenever } q_j = 0 \textit{ and } q_k \geq 0 \textit{ for all } k \neq j.$$

Proposition 5.6 (Positively invariant region for the solution $\boldsymbol{i(x,t)}$). *Suppose* $g \in L^2(0,T;\mathcal{D}_g)$ *and let* $u(t) = S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)u_0$ *be an* Ω*-periodic weak solution of* (3.3)–(3.6)*. Suppose the* w*-component of the weak solution,* $w(x,t)$*, is nonnegative for almost every* $x \in \Omega$ *and all* $t \in [0,T]$*,* $T > 0$*, and define the set*

$$\mathcal{D}_i := \left\{(\ell,\ell') \in \mathcal{L}^2_i \times \mathcal{L}^2_i : \ell \geq 0 \textit{ and } \ell' + \Gamma\ell \geq 0 \textit{ a.e. in } \Omega\right\}. \tag{5.21}$$

Then, for every $(i_0, i'_0) \in \mathcal{D}_i$*, we have* $(i(t), \mathrm{d}_t i(t)) \in \mathcal{D}_i$ *almost everywhere in* Ω *for all* $t \in [0,T]$*. An identical result holds for strong solutions* $u(t) = S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)u_0$ *of* (3.3)–(3.6) *with nonnegative* w*-component.*

Proof. Let $b := \mathrm{d}_t i + \Gamma i$ and rewrite (3.4) as the first-order system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{d}_t i &= -\Gamma i + b, \\ \mathrm{d}_t b &= -\Gamma b + e\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w + e\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v) + e\Upsilon\Gamma g. \end{aligned} \tag{5.22}$$

Let $x_0 \in \Omega$ be a Lebesgue point of the initial functions v_0, i_0, i'_0, w_0, and $g(0)$, and define $v_{x_0}(t)$, $i_{x_0}(t)$, $w_{x_0}(t)$, and $g_{x_0}(t)$ as given in the proof of Corollary 5.4. Accordingly, let $b_{x_0}(t) := b(x_0, t) = \mathrm{d}_t i_{x_0}(t) + \Gamma i_{x_0}(t)$.

Now, (5.22) implies that the function $q_{x_0} := (i_{x_0}, b_{x_0})$ satisfies the ODE $\mathrm{d}_t q_{x_0}(t) = P(q_{x_0}(t))$, $t \in [0, T]$, where the mapping $P : \mathbb{R}^8 \to \mathbb{R}^8$ given by

$$P(q_{x_0}) = P(i_{x_0}, b_{x_0}) := (-\Gamma i_{x_0} + b_{x_0}, -\Gamma b_{x_0} + e\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w_{x_0} + e\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v_{x_0}) + e\Upsilon\Gamma g_{x_0})$$

is Lipschitz continuous. Moreover, note that by assumption we have $w_{x_0} \geq 0$ and $g_{x_0} \geq 0$, which, along with the definitions of f, Υ, Γ, N, J_6, and J_7 given by (3.2) and (3.7), implies $e\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w_{x_0}(t) \geq 0$, $e\Upsilon\Gamma\mathrm{N} J_7 f(v_{x_0}(t)) \geq 0$, and $e\Upsilon\Gamma g_{x_0}(t) \geq 0$ for all $t \in [0, T]$. Therefore, it follows that P is quasi-positive, and hence by Proposition 5.5 we have $q_{x_0}(t) \geq 0$ for all $t \in [0, T]$. This completes the proof, since x_0 is an arbitrary Lebesgue point of the initial functions and almost every point in Ω is a Lebesgue point for these functions.[2] ■

Remark 5.7 (Biophysically plausible set of initial values). It is ensured by Propositions 5.3 and 5.6 that if $g \in L^2(0, \infty; \mathcal{D}_g)$, where $\mathcal{D}_g$ is given by (5.20), and the initial values lie in the set

$$\mathcal{D}_{\text{Bio}} := \mathcal{L}_v^2 \times \mathcal{D}_i \times \mathcal{D}_w, \tag{5.23}$$

where $\mathcal{D}_w$ and $\mathcal{D}_i$ are given by (5.14) and (5.21), respectively, then $i(x, t)$ and $w(x, t)$

---

[2] Note that there are fairly standard results in the literature that ensure the positivity of a $C^1(\overline{\Omega} \times [0, T]; \mathbb{R}^m)$ function as it evolves in time, provided its time derivative satisfies certain conditions on the boundary of the positive cone; see, for example, [52, Lem. 6] and [53]. The proofs of these results are relatively geometrical and usually use continuity of the functions and the compactness of $\overline{\Omega}$. However, these proofs are by no means applicable to functions in $C^1([0, T]; L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m))$. In fact, functions in $C^1([0, T]; L^2(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^m))$ are allowed to *leak* through the boundary of the positive cone on sets of measure zero at every $t \in [0, T]$. Since any subinterval of $[0, T]$ is uncountable, it is not guaranteed that the uncountable union of such leakage sets will have measure zero over a subinterval. In the proof of Proposition 5.6, we use the additional property that the functions are governed by a system of ODEs. Therefore, for all $t \in (0, T]$, the Banach space-valued function $i(t)$ is defined at the same almost every points in Ω as it is initially defined at $t = 0$. In other words, the leakage set remains unchanged for all $t \in (0, T]$.

always remain nonnegative at almost every point in Ω as they evolve in time. However, it should be noted that this does not imply that the set $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{Bio}} \subset \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$ is positively invariant, since Proposition 5.3 does not imply positive invariance of the set $\mathcal{D}_w$. Therefore, $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{Bio}}$ cannot serve as a phase space for the semidynamical system framework of the problem.

In the analysis of the following chapters, nonnegativity of the solution $i(x,t)$ is essential. Moreover, it would be of no practical value to analyze the dynamics of the model out of the biophysical regions of the phase space. Therefore, we define

(5.24)

$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} := \left\{u_0 \in \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}} : i(t) \geq 0, w(t) \geq 0 \text{ a.e. in } \Omega \text{ for all } t \in [0,\infty), u(t) = S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)u_0\right\},$$
$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} := \left\{u_0 \in \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}} : i(t) \geq 0, w(t) \geq 0 \text{ a.e. in } \Omega \text{ for all } t \in [0,\infty), u(t) = S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)u_0\right\}$$

as the maximal closed subsets of $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$ for the initial values of the weak and strong solutions, respectively, such that i and w initiating from the points in these sets evolve nonnegatively over time. Note that $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ are nonempty since $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{Bio}} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{Bio}} \cap \mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ when $g \in L^2(0,\infty,\mathcal{D}_g)$. Moreover, $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ are closed sets since $\left\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\left\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ are continuous semigroups, as given by Propositions 5.1 and 5.2. Moreover, it follows immediately from the definitions given by (5.24) that $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ are positively invariant sets. Therefore, endowed with the metric induced by the norm in $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$, the sets $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ form positively invariant complete metric spaces and can be considered as biophysically plausible phase spaces of the model, based on which we construct the semidynamical systems

$$\Big(\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}, \left\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}\Big), \quad \Big(\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}, \left\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}\Big)$$

associated with the weak and strong solutions of (3.3)–(3.6), respectively, and investigate their global dynamics in the remainder of the dissertation.

CHAPTER 6

EXISTENCE OF ABSORBING SETS

In this chapter, we prove the existence of bounded absorbing sets for the semigroups $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ acting on $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$, respectively. First, we recall the following definition of an absorbing set for an operator semigroup.

Definition 6.1 (Absorbing set [19, Def. II.2.3]). *A set $\mathscr{B}_0$ in a complete metric space $\mathcal{D}$ is called an* absorbing set *for the semigroup $\{S(t) : \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{D}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ if for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \in \mathcal{D}$ there exists $t_0(\mathscr{B}) \in (0,\infty)$ such that $S(t)\mathscr{B} \subset \mathscr{B}_0$ for all $t \geq t_0(\mathscr{B})$.*

Theorem 6.2 (Existence of absorbing sets in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$). *Assume that $g \in L^\infty(0,\infty; \mathcal{D}_g)$ and that there exists $\theta > 2\gamma_{\min}^{-3}$ such that*

(i) $\frac{4}{3}\theta e^2\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EE}}^2\gamma_{\max}(\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}})^{-3} < 1,$

(ii) $\frac{4}{3}\theta e^2\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EI}}^2\gamma_{\max}(\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}})^{-3} < 1,$

where $\gamma_{\min} := \min\{\gamma_{\mathrm{EE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{EI}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{IE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{II}}\}$ and $\gamma_{\max} := \max\{\gamma_{\mathrm{EE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{EI}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{IE}}, \gamma_{\mathrm{II}}\}$ are the smallest and largest eigenvalues of Γ, respectively. Then the semigroup $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ associated with the weak solutions of (3.3)–(3.6) *has a bounded absorbing set $\mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{w}}$. Specifically, consider the functions $Q_{\mathrm{w}}^- : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} \to [0,\infty)$ and $Q_{\mathrm{w}}^+ : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} \to [0,\infty)$*

defined by

$$\begin{aligned}
Q^-_{\mathrm{w}}(u) &:= \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \theta\left\|\mathrm{d}_t i + \frac{3}{2}\Gamma i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{4}\theta\left\|\Gamma i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w + \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\min\{6, \Lambda^2_{\min}\}\left\|w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}, \\
Q^+_{\mathrm{w}}(u) &:= \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \theta\left\|\mathrm{d}_t i + \frac{3}{2}\Gamma i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{4}\theta\left\|\Gamma i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w + \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\max\{6, \Lambda^2_{\max}\}\left\|w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w},
\end{aligned} \tag{6.1}$$

and a scalar ε *such that*

$$\max\left\{\frac{4}{3}\theta e^2\Upsilon^2_{\mathrm{EE}}\gamma_{\max}(\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}})^{-3}, \frac{4}{3}\theta e^2\Upsilon^2_{\mathrm{EI}}\gamma_{\max}(\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}})^{-3}\right\} < 2\gamma_{\max}\varepsilon < 1. \tag{6.2}$$

Let $\tau_{\max} := \max\{\tau_{\mathrm{E}}, \tau_{\mathrm{I}}\}$ *denote the largest eigenvalue of* Φ*, and let* $\Lambda_{\min} := \min\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}\}$ *and* $\Lambda_{\max} := \max\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}\}$ *denote the smallest and largest eigenvalues of* Λ*, respectively. Let* $\rho^2_{\mathrm{w}} := \frac{\beta_{\mathrm{w}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{w}}}$*, where*

$$\begin{aligned}
\alpha_{\mathrm{w}} := \min\Bigg\{&\frac{2}{3}\tau^{-1}_{\max}, \left(\frac{1}{2}\gamma^{-1}_{\max} - \varepsilon\right)\gamma^2_{\min}, 3\theta^{-1}\left(\theta\gamma_{\min} - 2\gamma^{-2}_{\min}\right), \frac{1}{2}\nu\Lambda_{\min}, \\
&3\nu\Lambda^{-2}_{\max}\min\left\{\Lambda^3_{\mathrm{EE}} - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}\Upsilon^2_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda^3_{\mathrm{EI}} - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}\Upsilon^2_{\mathrm{EI}}\right\}\Bigg\},
\end{aligned} \tag{6.3}$$

$$\beta_{\mathrm{w}} := \frac{4\theta e^2}{\gamma^{-1}_{\max} - 2\varepsilon}\left[|\Omega|(\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}} + \mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{I}})\left\|\Upsilon\mathrm{N}J_7\right\|^2_2 + \left\|\Upsilon\right\|^2_2\left\|g\right\|^2_{L^\infty(0,\infty;\mathcal{L}^2_i)}\right] + 2\nu^3|\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^3\mathrm{M}^2). \tag{6.4}$$

Then, for all $\rho > \rho_{\mathrm{w}}$*, the bounded sets* $\mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{w}} := \{u \in \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} : Q^-_{\mathrm{w}}(u) \le \rho^2\}$ *are absorbing in* $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$*. Moreover, for every bounded set* $\mathscr{B} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$*, there exists* $R > 0$ *such that* $Q^+_{\mathrm{w}}(u_0) \le R^2$ *for all* $u_0 \in \mathscr{B}$*, and* $S(t)\mathscr{B} \subset \mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{w}}$ *for all* $t \ge t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$*, where*

$$t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B}) = t_{\mathrm{w}}(R) := \max\left\{0, \frac{1}{\alpha_{\mathrm{w}}}\log\frac{R^2}{\rho^2 - \rho^2_{\mathrm{w}}}\right\}. \tag{6.5}$$

Proof. First, taking the inner product of (3.3) with v yields

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} - (J_1 i, v)_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \int_\Omega \left(v_1^2 i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + v_2^2 i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5\right) \mathrm{d}x = 0.$$

The integral term in this equation is nonnegative in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ for all $t \in [0, \infty)$; see (3.7) and (5.24). Therefore, dropping the integral term and using Young's inequality yields, for every $\varepsilon_1 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{d}_t \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} &\le -2(1-\varepsilon_1)\|v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \frac{1}{\varepsilon_1}\|i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \\ &\le -2(1-\varepsilon_1)\tau_{\max}^{-1}\left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \frac{1}{\varepsilon_1 \gamma_{\min}^2}\|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.6}$$

Next, let $b := \mathrm{d}_t i + \frac{3}{2}\Gamma i$ and rewrite (3.4) as

$$\mathrm{d}_t b + \frac{1}{2}\Gamma b + \frac{1}{4}\Gamma^2 i - e\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w - e\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v) = e\Upsilon\Gamma g.$$

Taking the inner product of the above equality with b yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t \|b\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{2}(\Gamma b, b)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{8}\mathrm{d}_t \|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{3}{8}\left\|\Gamma^{\frac{3}{2}} i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \\ - e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, b)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} - e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v), b)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} = e\,(\Upsilon\Gamma g, b)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} (\Gamma b, b)_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} &\ge \gamma_{\max}^{-1}\|\Gamma b\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}, \\ \left\|\Gamma^{\frac{3}{2}} i\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} &\ge \gamma_{\min}\|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i}, \end{aligned}$$

and, using similar arguments as in the proof of Proposition 4.4, it follows that for every $\varepsilon_2, \varepsilon_3, \varepsilon_4 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}
e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma J_6 w, b\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\leq \varepsilon_2 \left\|\Gamma b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_2}\left\|\Upsilon J_6 w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 \\
e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v), b\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\leq \varepsilon_3 \left\|\Gamma b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2|\Omega|}{4\varepsilon_3}(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon \mathrm{N} J_7\right\|_2^2, \\
e\left(\Upsilon\Gamma g, b\right)_{\mathcal{L}_i^2} &\leq \varepsilon_4 \left\|\Gamma b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{4\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Upsilon\right\|_2^2 \left\|g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{(6.7)}\quad \mathrm{d}_t\left[\left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{1}{4}\left\|\Gamma i\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2\right] \leq &-\left(\gamma_{\max}^{-1} - 2(\varepsilon_2+\varepsilon_3+\varepsilon_4)\right)\left\|\Gamma b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 - \frac{3}{4}\gamma_{\min}\left\|\Gamma i\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 \\
&+ \frac{e^2}{2\varepsilon_2}\left\|\Upsilon J_6 w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{e^2}{2\varepsilon_3}|\Omega|(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon \mathrm{N} J_7\right\|_2^2 \\
&+ \frac{e^2}{2\varepsilon_4}\left\|\Upsilon\right\|_2^2 \left\|g\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2.
\end{aligned}$$

Next, let $q := \mathrm{d}_t w + \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda w$ and rewrite (3.5) as

$$\text{(6.8)}\qquad \mathrm{d}_t q + \frac{1}{2}\nu\Lambda q - \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta w + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\Lambda^2 w - \nu^2\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v) = 0.$$

Taking the inner product of this equality with q yields

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t\left\|q\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}q\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\mathrm{d}_t\left\|\partial_x w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2}^2 + \frac{9}{4}\nu^3\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\partial_x w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_{\partial w}^2}^2 + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\mathrm{d}_t\left\|\Lambda w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 \\
+ \frac{3}{8}\nu^3\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{3}{2}}w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 - \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

Using similar arguments as in the proof of Proposition 4.4, we can write, for every $\varepsilon_5 > 0$,

$$\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v^{(m)}), q\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \leq \varepsilon_5\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}q\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 + \frac{1}{4\varepsilon_5}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^3\mathrm{M}^2),$$

and hence it follows that

$$\tag{6.9} \begin{aligned} \mathrm{d}_t &\left[\|q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2 \|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2 \|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right] \\ &\leq -\nu(1-2\nu\varepsilon_5)\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} q\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} - 3\nu\Big(\frac{3}{2}\nu^2 \left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\partial_x w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{3}{2}} w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\Big) \\ &\quad + \frac{\nu^2}{2\varepsilon_5}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}^2_{\mathrm{E}}\,\mathrm{tr}(\Lambda^3\mathrm{M}^2). \end{aligned}$$

Now, set $\varepsilon_1 = \frac{2}{3}$ in (6.6), set $\varepsilon_3 = \varepsilon_4 = \frac{1}{8}(\gamma^{-1}_{\max} - 2\varepsilon)$ in (6.7) with $\varepsilon := \varepsilon_2$, and set $\varepsilon_5 = \frac{1}{4\nu}$ in (6.9). Then, multiplying (6.7) by $\theta > 0$ and adding the result to (6.6) and (6.9) yields

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{d}_t Q_{\mathrm{w}} \leq &-\frac{2}{3}\tau^{-1}_{\max}\left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} - \theta\left(\frac{1}{2}\gamma^{-1}_{\max} - \varepsilon\right)\|\Gamma b\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \\ &- \frac{3}{4}\left(\theta\gamma_{\min} - 2\gamma^{-2}_{\min}\right)\|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} - \frac{1}{2}\nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}} q\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\ &- 3\nu\left(\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\partial_x w\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\left(\left[\Lambda^3 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon} J_6^{\mathrm{T}}\Upsilon^2 J_6\right] w, w\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}\right) + \beta_{\mathrm{w}}, \end{aligned}$$

where β_{w} is given by (6.4) and

$$\tag{6.10} \begin{aligned} Q_{\mathrm{w}}(u) = &\left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \theta\|b\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{4}\theta\|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|q\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2\|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_{\partial w}} \\ &+ \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w}. \end{aligned}$$

Note that for $\theta > 2\gamma^{-3}_{\min}$ we have $\theta\gamma_{\min} - 2\gamma^{-2}_{\min} > 0$, and for the range of values of ε given by (6.2), we have $\frac{1}{2}\gamma^{-1}_{\max} - \varepsilon > 0$. Moreover, assumptions (i) and (ii) along with (6.2) ensure that $\Lambda^3 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}J_6^{\mathrm{T}}\Upsilon^2 J_6 > 0$. Therefore, with the decay rate α_{w} given by (6.3),

$$\tag{6.11} \mathrm{d}_t Q_{\mathrm{w}}(u) \leq -\alpha_{\mathrm{w}} Q_{\mathrm{w}}(u) + \beta_{\mathrm{w}},$$

and hence, using Grönwall's inequality [18, sect. III.1.1.3.],

$$Q_{\mathrm{w}}^{-}(u(t)) \leq Q_{\mathrm{w}}^{+}(u(0)) e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{w}} t} + \rho_0^2 \left(1 - e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{w}} t}\right), \tag{6.12}$$

where Q_{w}^{-} and Q_{w}^{+} are given in (6.1) and $\limsup_{t\to\infty} Q_{\mathrm{w}}^{-}(u(t)) \leq \rho_0^2 := \frac{\beta_{\mathrm{w}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{w}}}$. Now, since the mapping

$$(v, i, i', w, w') \mapsto \left(\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v, \frac{1}{2}\theta^{\frac{1}{2}}\Gamma i, \theta^{\frac{1}{2}}[i' + \frac{3}{2}\Gamma i], \frac{1}{2}\nu[\max\{6, \Lambda_{\max}^2\}]^{\frac{1}{2}} w, w' + \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda w\right) \tag{6.13}$$

is a linear isomorphism over $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$, for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$ there exists $R > 0$ such that $Q_{\mathrm{w}}^{+}(u_0) \leq R^2$ for all $u_0 \in \mathscr{B}$. Hence, it is immediate from (6.12) that $S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\mathscr{B} \subset \mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{w}}$ for all $t \geq t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$, where $t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$ is given by (6.5). ■

Theorem 6.3 (Existence of absorbing sets in $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$). *Suppose the assumptions of Theorem 6.2 hold, namely, assume that* $g \in L^\infty(0,\infty;\mathcal{D}_g)$ *and that there exists* $\theta > 2\gamma_{\min}^{-3}$ *such that the biophysical parameters of the model satisfy*

(i) $\frac{4}{3}\theta e^2 \Upsilon_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 \gamma_{\max} (\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}})^{-3} < 1,$

(ii) $\frac{4}{3}\theta e^2 \Upsilon_{\mathrm{EI}}^2 \gamma_{\max} (\nu\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}})^{-3} < 1,$

where $\gamma_{\min}$ *and* $\gamma_{\max}$ *are the smallest and largest eigenvalues of* Γ*, respectively. Then the semigroup* $\left\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *associated with the strong solutions of* (3.3)–(3.6) *has a bounded absorbing set* $\mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{s}}$*. Specifically, consider the function* $Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-} : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} \to [0,\infty)$ *defined by*

$$Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u) := \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \theta \left\|\mathrm{d}_t i + \frac{3}{2}\Gamma i\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{1}{4}\theta \left\|\Gamma i\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \left\|\mathrm{d}_t w + \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2 \min\{6, \Lambda_{\min}^2\} \left\|(-\Delta + I)w\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2, \tag{6.14}$$

and denote by $\Lambda_{\min}$ *and* $\Lambda_{\max}$ *the smallest and largest eigenvalues of* Λ*, respectively,* *and by* $\tau_{\max}$ *the largest eigenvalue of* Φ*. Let* $\rho_{\mathrm{s}}^2 := \frac{2\beta_{\mathrm{s}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}}$ *with*

$$\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} := \min\left\{\frac{2}{3}\tau_{\max}^{-1}, \left(\frac{1}{2}\gamma_{\max}^{-1} - \varepsilon\right)\gamma_{\min}^2, 3\theta^{-1}\left(\theta\gamma_{\min} - 2\gamma_{\min}^{-2}\right), \nu\Lambda_{\min}, \right.$$
$$\left. 3\nu\Lambda_{\max}^{-2}\min\left\{\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^3 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EE}}^2, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}^3 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EI}}^2\right\}\right\}, \tag{6.15}$$

$$\beta_{\mathrm{s}} := \frac{4\theta e^2}{\gamma_{\max}^{-1} - 2\varepsilon}\left[|\Omega|(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2)\left\|\Upsilon \mathrm{N} J_7\right\|_2^2 + \left\|\Upsilon\right\|_2^2\left\|g\right\|_{L^\infty(0,\infty;\mathcal{L}_i^2)}^2\right]$$
$$+ 2\nu^2\left[\frac{1}{32\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2}\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\eta\rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2(1+\rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2) + \frac{1}{4}|\Omega|\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2\operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4\mathrm{M}^2)\left(\frac{1}{\varepsilon_1} + \frac{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}}{\varepsilon_2}\right)\right], \tag{6.16}$$

where η *is a positive constant,* $\rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2 := \frac{\beta_{\mathrm{w}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{w}}}$ *is the same constant as given in Theorem 6.2, the scalar* ε *takes values within the same range as given by (6.2), and*

$$\varepsilon_1 := \frac{1}{32}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}\min\{6, \Lambda_{\min}^2\}\left(1 + \left\|\frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda - \alpha I\right\|_2^2\right)^{-1}, \quad \varepsilon_2 := \frac{1}{16}\min\{6, \Lambda_{\min}^2\}. \tag{6.17}$$

Then, for all $\rho > \rho_{\mathrm{s}}$*, the bounded sets* $\mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{s}} := \{u \in \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} : Q_{\mathrm{s}}^-(u) \leq \rho^2\}$ *are absorbing in* $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$*.*

Proof. Let $A := -\Delta + I$ and take the inner product of (6.8) with Aq to obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\mathrm{d}_t\left\|q\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 + \frac{1}{2}\nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}q\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 + \frac{3}{4}\nu^2\mathrm{d}_t\left\|\partial_x w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_{\partial w}^1}^2 + \frac{9}{4}\nu^3\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\partial_x w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_{\partial w}^1}^2 + \frac{1}{8}\nu^2\mathrm{d}_t\left\|\Lambda w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2$$
$$+ \frac{3}{8}\nu^3\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{3}{2}}w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 - \nu^2\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v), Aq\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} = 0.$$

This equality, along with the inequalities (6.6) and (6.7) derived in the proof of Theorem 6.2 and the same values of $\varepsilon_1, \ldots, \varepsilon_4$ therein, implies that

$$\mathrm{d}_t Q_{\mathrm{s}} \leq -\frac{2}{3}\tau_{\max}\left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}}v\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 - \theta\left(\frac{1}{2}\gamma_{\max}^{-1} - \varepsilon\right)\left\|\Gamma b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 - \frac{3}{4}\left(\theta\gamma_{\min} - 2\gamma_{\min}^{-2}\right)\left\|\Gamma i\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2$$
$$- \nu\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}q\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 - 3\nu\left(\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\left\|\Lambda^{\frac{1}{2}}\partial_x w\right\|_{\mathcal{H}_{\partial w}^1}^2 + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2\left(\left[\Lambda^3 - \frac{2}{3}\frac{\theta e^2}{\nu^3\varepsilon}J_6^{\mathrm{T}}\Upsilon^2 J_6\right]w, w\right)_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}\right)$$
$$+ 2\nu^2\left(\Lambda^2\mathrm{M}J_8 f(v), Aq\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} + \beta,$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{\mathrm{s}}(u) &:= \left\|\Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v\right\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \theta \|b\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \frac{1}{4}\theta \|\Gamma i\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|q\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w} + \frac{3}{2}\nu^2 \|\partial_x w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_{\partial w}} + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2 \|\Lambda w\|^2_{\mathcal{H}^1_w}, \\ \beta &:= \frac{4\theta e^2}{\gamma_{\max}^{-1} - 2\varepsilon} \left[|\Omega|(\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 + \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{I}}^2) \|\Upsilon \mathrm{N} J_7\|_2^2 + \|\Upsilon\|_2^2 \|g\|^2_{L^\infty(0,\infty;\mathcal{L}^2_i)} \right], \end{aligned}$$

and ε takes values within the range given by (6.2). Now, using similar arguments as in the proof of Theorem 6.2, it follows from assumptions (i) and (ii) with $\theta > 2\gamma_{\min}^{-3}$ that

$$\mathrm{d}_t Q_{\mathrm{s}}(u) \leq -\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} Q_{\mathrm{s}}(u) + 2\nu^2 \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), Aq\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \beta, \tag{6.18}$$

where the decay rate α_{s} is given by (6.15). Then, Grönwall's inequality [18, sect. III.1.1.3.] implies

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{\mathrm{s}}(u(t)) \leq Q_{\mathrm{s}}(u(0)) e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} &+ 2\nu^2 \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), Aq\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \\ &+ \frac{\beta}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}}\left(1 - e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t}\right). \end{aligned} \tag{6.19}$$

Replacing $q := \mathrm{d}_t w + \frac{3}{2}\nu \Lambda w$ in the integral term in the above inequality and integrating by parts yields

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), Aq\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s = &- \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \mathrm{d}_s f(v), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \\ &+ \int_0^t \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), (\frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda - \alpha_{\mathrm{s}} I) Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \\ &+ \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), Aw\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} \\ &- \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v_0), Aw_0\right)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t}. \end{aligned}$$

Next, noting that $\mathrm{d}_s f(v) = \partial_v f(v) \mathrm{d}_s v$ and $\sup_{v_{\mathrm{E}}(x,t) \in \mathbb{R}} |\partial_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f_{\mathrm{E}}(v_{\mathrm{E}})| \leq \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}}{2\sqrt{2}\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}}$ by (4.37), it follows that, for every $\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^t \big(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v), Aq\big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \le{}& \varepsilon_1 \big(1 + \left\| \frac{3}{2}\nu\Lambda - \alpha_{\mathrm{s}} I \right\|_2^2 \big) \int_0^t \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \\ &+ \frac{1}{32\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2} \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \int_0^t \|\mathrm{d}_s v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s \\ &+ \varepsilon_2 \|Aw\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} + \frac{1}{4}|\Omega| \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \left(\frac{1}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}\varepsilon_1} + \frac{1}{\varepsilon_2}\right) \\ &- \big(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v_0), Aw_0\big)_{\mathcal{L}^2_w} e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t}.\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, it follows from Theorem 6.2 that for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ there exists a time $t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$, given by (6.5), and positive constants η_1 and η_2 such that $\|v(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \le \eta_1 \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2$ and $\|i(t)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \le \eta_1 \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2$ for all $t \ge t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$. Therefore, using the estimate (5.12), we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\int_0^t \|\mathrm{d}_s v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s &\le \int_0^{t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})} \|\mathrm{d}_s v\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}(s-t)} \mathrm{d}s + \frac{1}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}} \eta \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2 (1 + \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2) \\ &\le \kappa_0(\mathscr{B}) e^{-\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} + \frac{1}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}} \eta \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2 (1 + \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2),\end{aligned} \tag{6.20}$$

where η is a positive constant and, for some $\alpha > 0$,

$$\kappa_0(\mathscr{B}) := \alpha \int_0^{t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})} \Big(\|v(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} + \|v(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \|i(s)\|^2_{\mathcal{L}^2_i} \Big) e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} s} \mathrm{d}s < \infty.$$

Now, using the above estimate for the integral term in (6.19) with ε_1 and ε_2 given by (6.17) yields

$$Q_{\mathrm{s}}^-(u) e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} \le \frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} \int_0^t Q_{\mathrm{s}}^-(u) e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} s} \mathrm{d}s + \kappa(\mathscr{B}) + \frac{\beta_{\mathrm{s}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}} e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t}, \tag{6.21}$$

where $\beta_{\mathrm{s}} := \beta + 2\nu^2 \left[\frac{1}{32\varepsilon_1} \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2} \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \eta \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2 (1 + \rho_{\mathrm{w}}^2) + \frac{1}{4} |\Omega| \mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2 \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2) \big(\frac{1}{\varepsilon_1} + \frac{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}}{\varepsilon_2} \big) \right]$ as given in (6.16), $Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u)$ is given in (6.14), and

$$\kappa(\mathscr{B}) := Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{+}(u(0)) + 2\nu^2 \left[\frac{1}{32\varepsilon_1} \frac{\mathrm{F}_{\mathrm{E}}^2}{\sigma_{\mathrm{E}}^2} \operatorname{tr}(\Lambda^4 \mathrm{M}^2)\kappa_0(\mathscr{B}) - \left(\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v_0), Aw_0\right)_{\mathcal{L}_w^2} \right] - \frac{\beta}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}},$$
$$Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{+}(u) := \left\| \Phi^{\frac{1}{2}} v \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}^2 + \theta \left\| b \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \frac{1}{4}\theta \left\| \Gamma i \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^2}^2 + \left\| q \right\|_{\mathcal{H}_w^1}^2 + \frac{1}{4}\nu^2 \max\{6, \Lambda_{\max}^2\} \left\| Aw \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_w^2}^2 .$$

Next, using Grönwall's inequality for the function $\int_0^t Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u) e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} s} \mathrm{d}s$ in (6.21) gives

$$\int_0^t Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u) e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} s} \mathrm{d}s \le \frac{1}{\frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}} \left[\kappa(\mathscr{B}) \left(e^{\frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} - 1 \right) + \frac{\beta_{\mathrm{s}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}} \left(e^{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} - e^{\frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} \right) \right],$$

which along with (6.21) implies

$$Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u) \le \kappa(\mathscr{B}) e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} + \rho_{\mathrm{s}}^2 \left(1 - \frac{1}{2} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\alpha_{\mathrm{s}} t} \right), \tag{6.22}$$

where $\limsup_{t\to\infty} Q_{\mathrm{s}}^{-}(u(t)) \le \rho_{\mathrm{s}}^2 := \frac{2\beta_{\mathrm{s}}}{\alpha_{\mathrm{s}}}$.

Finally, considering the linear isomorphism (6.13) over $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$, it follows that for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$ there exists $R > 0$ such that $\kappa(\mathscr{B}) \le R^2$ for all $u_0 \in \mathscr{B}$. Therefore, (6.22) implies that $S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\mathscr{B} \subset \mathscr{B}_{\mathrm{s}}$ for all $t \ge t_{\mathrm{s}}(\mathscr{B})$ and some $t_{\mathrm{s}}(\mathscr{B}) > 0$, which completes the proof. ■

Note that an estimate similar to (6.5) given in Theorem 6.2 can also be obtained for $t_{\mathrm{s}}(\mathscr{B})$ in the proof of Theorem 6.3. However, this would be of limited practical value since the bound (6.20) is very conservative for times $t \ll t_{\mathrm{w}}(\mathscr{B})$.

Remark 6.4 (Conditions on parameter sets). For the range of values given in Table 3.1, the maximum value that the left-hand side of the inequalities in assumptions (i) and (ii) of Theorems 6.2 and 6.3 may take is $39.4083\,\theta$, which is achieved when $\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EE}} = 2$, $\Upsilon_{\mathrm{EI}} = 2$, $\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}} = 0.1$, $\Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}} = 0.1$, $\nu = 100$, and $\gamma_{\max} = 1000$. Assumptions (i) and (ii) then require that $\theta < \frac{1}{39.4083} = 0.0254$. Moreover, Theorems 6.2 and 6.3 allow for $\theta > 2\gamma_{\min}^{-3} \ge 0.002$, in accordance with Table 3.1. This implies that—for the entire range of values that the biophysical parameters of the model may take—the conditions imposed by Theorems 6.2 and 6.3 are satisfied at least for any $0.002 < \theta < 0.0254$, and the model (3.1) possesses bounded absorbing sets as given by these theorems.

CHAPTER 7

EXISTENCE AND NONEXISTENCE OF A GLOBAL ATTRACTOR

In this chapter, we investigate the problem of existence of a global attractor for the semigroups $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ of solution operators of (3.3)–(3.6). First, we recall the definition of a global attractor, and a widely used theorem for establishing the existence of a global attractor. See [21, Chap. 1] for the motivation behind this definition, and [21, Chap. 3] for further results.

Definition 7.1 (Attracting set [19, Def. II.2.4]). *A set* $\mathscr{P}$ *in a complete metric space* $\mathcal{D}$ *is called an* attracting set *for a semigroup* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *acting in* $\mathcal{D}$ *if, for every bounded set* $\mathscr{B} \Subset \mathcal{D}$, $\operatorname{dist}_{\mathcal{D}}(S(t)\mathscr{B}, \mathscr{P}) \to 0$ *as* $t \to \infty$*. Here,* $\operatorname{dist}_{\mathcal{D}}(\mathscr{G}, \mathscr{H}) := \sup_{g\in\mathscr{G}} \inf_{h\in\mathscr{H}} \mathrm{m}_{\mathcal{D}}(g, h)$ *is the Hausdorff distance between the two sets* $\mathscr{G}, \mathscr{H} \subset \mathcal{D}$*, where* $\mathrm{m}_{\mathcal{D}}$ *denotes the metric on* $\mathcal{D}$*.*

Definition 7.2 (Global attractor [19, Def. II.3.1]). *A bounded set* $\mathscr{A}$ *in a complete metric space* $\mathcal{D}$ *is called a* global attractor *for a semigroup* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *acting in* $\mathcal{D}$ *if it satisfies the following conditions:*

(i) $\mathscr{A}$ *is compact in* $\mathcal{D}$*,*

(ii) $\mathscr{A}$ *is an attracting set for* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$*,*

(iii) $\mathscr{A}$ *is strictly invariant with respect to* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$*, that is,* $S(t)\mathscr{A} = \mathscr{A}$ *for all* $t \in [0, \infty)$*.*

Definition 7.3 (Asymptotic compactness [19, Def. II.2.5]). *The semigroup* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *acting in a complete metric space* $\mathcal{D}$ *is called* asymptotically compact *if it possesses a compact attracting set* $\mathscr{K} \Subset \mathcal{D}$*.*

Theorem 7.4 (Global attractor [19, Thm. II.3.1]). *Let* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *be an asymptotically compact continuous semigroup in a complete metric space* $\mathcal{D}$*, possessing a compact attracting set* $\mathscr{K} \Subset \mathcal{D}$*. Then* $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ *has a global attractor* $\mathscr{A} \subset \mathscr{K}$ *given by* $\mathscr{A} = \omega(\mathscr{K})$*, where* $\omega(\mathscr{K})$ *is the* ω*-limit set of* $\mathscr{K}$*.*

7.1 Challenges in Establishing a Global Attractor

In this section, we discuss some of the standard approaches available in the literature for establishing a global attractor based on Theorem 7.4, and identify reasons that make these approaches rather unpromising for the model (3.3)–(3.5).

Continuity of $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$, as required by Theorem 7.4, is established in Propositions 5.1 and 5.2, respectively. To prove asymptotic compactness of a semigroup $\{S(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ acting in $\mathcal{D}$, a general approach is to first show that the semigroup possesses a bounded absorbing set and then to show that the semigroup is κ-contracting, meaning that $\lim_{t\to\infty} \kappa(S(t)\mathscr{B}) = 0$ for any bounded set $\mathscr{B} \in \mathcal{D}$, where κ denotes the Kuratowski measure of noncompactness; see [54, 55] and [21, Chap. 3]. An effective way to establish the latter property is through a decomposition $S(t) = S_1(t) + S_2(t)$ such that for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \in \mathcal{D}$ the component $S_1(t)\mathscr{B}$ converges uniformly to 0 as $t \to \infty$, and the component $S_2(t)\mathscr{B}$ is κ-contractive or is precompact in $\mathcal{D}$ for large t [48, 18].

As the first step towards proving the asymptotic compactness property stated above, existence of bounded absorbing sets for $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ is established in Theorems 6.2 and 6.3, respectively. However, it turns out that the κ-contracting property is hard to achieve for the model (3.3)–(3.5) with parameter values in the range given in Table 3.1, due to the lack of space-dissipative terms in the ODEs (3.3) and (3.4), the nature of nonlinear couplings in (3.3) and (3.4), and the range of values of the biophysical parameters of the model.

The uniform compactness of the component $S_2(t)$ in the decomposition approach stated above is usually verified by establishing energy estimates in more regular function spaces and then deducing compactness from compact embedding theorems. This approach, although successfully used in [49] to prove existence of a global attractor for a coupled ODE-PDE reaction-diffusion system, is not very promising here. In [49], the ODE subsystem is linear and the energy estimates in a higher regular space are achieved by taking space derivatives of the ODEs and constructing energy functionals for the resulting equations. As seen in the proof of Theorem 6.2, the nonnegativity of $i(x,t)$ is a key property that permits elimination of the sign-indefinite quadratic term in the energy equation of (3.3), which results in the energy variation inequality (6.6). This nonnegativity property, however, is not preserved in the derivative or any other variations of $i(x,t)$, leaving some sign-indefinite quadratic terms in the analysis. Moreover, it can be observed from the range of parameter values given in Table 3.1 that the sign-indefinite nonlinear terms that would appear in the energy equations of any variations of (3.3) and (3.4) have significantly larger coefficients compared with the sign-definite dissipative terms. This makes it challenging to balance the terms in the energy functional in order to absorb the nondissipative terms into dissipative ones. Finally, the nonlinear terms appearing in (3.3) and (3.4) do not satisfy the usual assumptions, as in, e.g., [56, sect. 11.1], that enable shaping the energy functional to eliminate the nondissipative terms that would otherwise appear in the equations.

Some other techniques are available in the literature to avoid energy estimations in higher regular spaces. In [54], for instance, the notion of ω-limit compactness is used to develop necessary and sufficient conditions for existence of a global attractor. This is accomplished by decomposing the phase space into two spaces, one of which is finite-dimensional, and then showing that for every bounded set $\mathscr{B} \subset \mathcal{D}$ the canonical projection of $S(t)\mathscr{B}$ onto the finite-dimensional space is bounded, and the canonical projection on the complement space remains arbitrarily small for sufficiently large $t \geq t_0$ for some $t_0 = t_0(\mathscr{B}) > 0$. These decomposition techniques, however, rely on the spectral decomposition of the space-acting operators to construct the desired phase space decomposition. Such operators do not exist in the ODE subsystems (3.3) and (3.4) in our problem.

7.2 Nonexistence of a Global Attractor

As discussed in Section 7.1, establishing a global attractor for (3.3)–(3.5) is a challenging problem. In fact, in this section we show that there exist sets of parameter values, leading to physiologically reasonable behavior in the model, for which the semigroups $\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t)\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ do not possess a global attractor.

We first use [56, Prop. 11.11] to prove Theorem 7.5 below, which gives sufficient conditions for noncompactness of the equilibrium sets of (3.3)–(3.5) in $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$ and $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$. However, before embarking on the technical details of this theorem, we delineate the main idea using the following intuitive discussion.

Assume that the ODE components (3.3) and (3.4) are decoupled from the PDE component (3.5) by freezing $w(x,t)$ in space and time in (3.4). In this case, (3.3) and (3.4) can be viewed *pointwise* as an uncountable set of dynamical systems governed by ODEs that are enumerated by points $x \in \Omega$. To distinguish this pointwise view, let $(v_x(t), i_x(t))$ denote the solution of the dynamical system located at $x \in \Omega$, in contrast with $(v(x,t), i(x,t))$ that denotes the solution of the decoupled ODEs (3.3) and (3.4) defined over Ω. Note that the pointwise-defined dynamical systems are fully decoupled from each other, which means the solutions $(v_x(t), i_x(t))$ and $(v_y(t), i_y(t))$ evolve totally independently in time for every $x \neq y \in \Omega$.

Now, assume further that the decoupled ODE system (3.3) and (3.4) possesses more than one equilibrium, two of which are denoted by $(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}})$ and (v_0, i_0). Then, all pointwise defined dynamical systems correspondingly possess more than one equilibrium, in particular $(v_{x\mathrm{e}}, i_{x\mathrm{e}}) = (v_{\mathrm{e}}(x), i_{\mathrm{e}}(x))$ and $(v_{x0}, i_{x0}) = (v_0(x), i_0(x))$ for the system located at x. This implies that the solutions $(v_x(t), i_x(t))$ can converge independently to different values at different points $x \in \Omega$. Therefore, when composed together, they form a solution $(v(x,t), i(x,t))$ for the decoupled ODE system (3.3) and (3.4), which can possibly develop drastic discontinuities over Ω as it evolves in time. Note that such discontinuities in the solutions can occur even though the initial values are smooth. Moreover, it follows in particular that the ODE system (3.3) and (3.4) possesses an uncountable discrete equilibrium set. In fact, any function composed arbitrarily of either values $(v_{x\mathrm{e}}, i_{x\mathrm{e}})$ and (v_{x0}, i_{x0}) at each point $x \in \Omega$ would be an equilibrium.

The idea of Theorem 7.5 is to prove that the space-smoothing effect of the coupling with the PDE component (3.5) is not sufficiently strong to rule out the discontinuities of the above nature in (v, i) and, in particular, having a noncompact equilibrium set. Define the mappings

$$\begin{aligned} P_v(v,i) &:= v - J_1 i + J_2 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_4 + J_3 v i^{\mathrm{T}} \Psi J_5, \\ P_i(v,i) &:= (e\Upsilon)^{-1}\Gamma i - \mathrm{N} J_7 f(v) - g, \end{aligned} \tag{7.1}$$

and let $(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e}, w_\mathrm{e})$ be an equilibrium of (3.3)–(3.5), that is, $P_v(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e}) = 0$ and $P_i(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e}) = J_6 w_\mathrm{e}$. Assume that there exists $(v_0, i_0) \neq (v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$ such that $P_v(v_0, i_0) = 0$ and $P_i(v_0, i_0) = P_i(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$. In this case, $(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$ and (v_0, i_0) are both equilibria of the system (3.3) and (3.4) if we assume that it is decoupled from (3.5) by freezing w at $w = w_\mathrm{e}$. Therefore, motivated by the discussion above, we can construct a new equilibrium $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ for this decoupled system by letting $(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = (v_0, i_0)$ over an arbitrary set Ω_0, and $(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = (v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$ over the complement set Ω_e. This construction is illustrated in Figure 7.1.

Since w is not actually frozen at $w = w_\mathrm{e}$, the function $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ is not necessarily a component of a new equilibrium of the coupled system (3.3)–(3.5). However, if it is certain that w remains close to w_e, then we can expect that there exists a

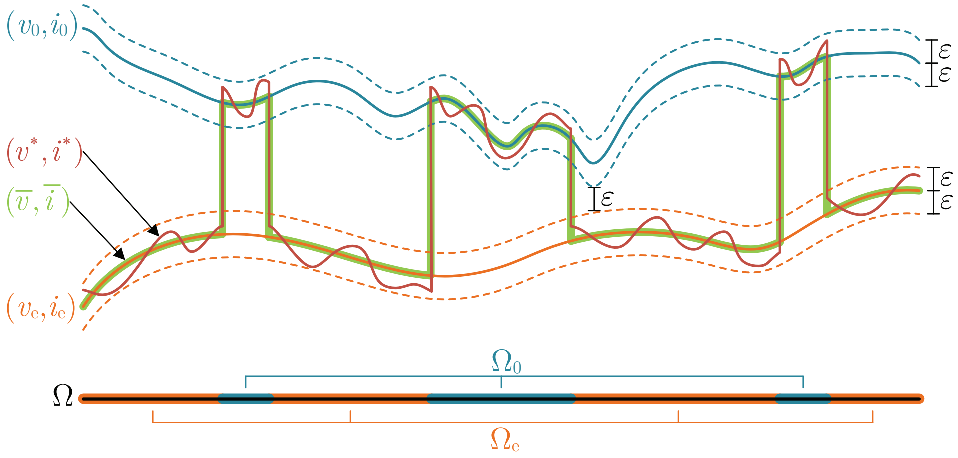


Figure 7.1: Illustrative construction of new equilibria as given by Theorem 7.5. To avoid unnecessary complexity in the graph, only one representative curve out of the six curves in the (v, i) components of the solutions is shown.

new equilibrium (v^*, i^*, w^*) of (3.3)–(3.5) whose component (v^*, i^*) is close to $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$. Since the w-component of an equilibrium of (3.3)–(3.5) is continuous over $\overline{\Omega}$, we may postulate that, provided the sets Ω_0 are sufficiently small, updating $(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$ by $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ in the equilibrium equations would not greatly deviate the w-component from w_e and the above expectation is satisfied. This postulation is indeed true, and it is proved in Theorem 7.5 that under certain conditions a new equilibrium (v^*, i^*, w^*) exists such that (v^*, i^*) are arbitrarily close to $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ provided Ω_0 is sufficiently small. The proof is relatively involved and constitutes the core part of the proof of Theorem 7.5. It relies strongly on the $\mathcal{L}^\infty_w$-boundedness of the space-acting operator A^{-1} that appears in the equilibrium equations, and on assumption (iv) of Theorem 7.5. Figure 7.1 gives an illustration of the component (v^*, i^*) lying uniformly closer than ε to $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$.

Finally, the noncompactness of the equilibrium set of (3.3)–(3.5) follows if we show that the existence of equilibria (v^*, i^*, w^*) is uniform with respect to the shape of the sets Ω_0, that is, as long as only the size of Ω_0 is smaller than a uniform bound. In this case, we take ε small enough such that the distance between $(v_\mathrm{e}(x), i_\mathrm{e}(x))$ and $(v_0(x), i_0(x))$ is larger than 3ε. Then, for any two sufficiently small sets $\tilde{\Omega}_0$ and $\hat{\Omega}_0$, we can construct new equilibria as discussed above, having components closer than ε to their associated estimates $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$. It can be observed from Figure 7.1 that the associated components (v^*, i^*) of these two equilibria would certainly be at a distance larger than ε from each other, at least on the difference between the two sets $\tilde{\Omega}_0$ and $\hat{\Omega}_0$. Therefore, since this construction is independent of the shape of the sets $\tilde{\Omega}_0$ and $\hat{\Omega}_0$ and we have uncountably different choices for these sets, it follows that we can construct an uncountable set of disjoint equilibria. This implies noncompactness of the equilibrium set of (3.3)–(3.5). Theorem 7.5 below gives rigorous arguments for the above discussion.

Theorem 7.5 (Noncompactness of equilibrium sets). *Suppose g is bounded and constant in time, that is, $g(x,t) = g(x)$ for all $(x,t) \in \Omega \times [0,\infty)$ and $g \in \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$. Let $u_\mathrm{e} := (v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e}, 0, w_\mathrm{e}, 0)$ be an equilibrium of* (3.3)–(3.5) *such that $v_\mathrm{e} \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty$, $i_\mathrm{e} \in \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, and $w_\mathrm{e} \in \mathcal{H}_w^2$. Define the mapping $P = (P_v, P_i) : \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty \to \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ as in* (7.1) *and let $A := -\frac{3}{2}\Delta + \Lambda^2 I$. Assume that the following conditions hold.*

(i) *Λ_{EE} and Λ_{EI} take the same values, that is, $\Lambda = \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}} I_{2\times 2} = \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}} I_{2\times 2}$.*

(ii) *There exists $(v_0, i_0) \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ such that*

$$\operatorname*{ess\,inf}_{x\in\Omega} \left\| (v_\mathrm{e}(x), i_\mathrm{e}(x)) - (v_0(x), i_0(x)) \right\|_\infty > 0$$

and

$$P_v(v_0, i_0) = 0, \quad P_i(v_0, i_0) = P_i(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e}). \tag{7.2}$$

(iii) *$\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_\mathrm{e}, i_\mathrm{e})$ and $\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_0, i_0)$ are nonsingular almost everywhere in Ω.*

(iv) *There exists $\alpha > 0$ such that, for every $b = (b_v, b_i) \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, the system of* *equations*

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P_v(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}})\phi = b_v, \qquad (7.3)$$

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P_i(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}})\phi - J_6 A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(v_{\mathrm{e}})\phi_v = b_i$$

has a unique solution $\phi = (\phi_v, \phi_i) \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ *that satisfies*

$$\|\phi\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \alpha \|b\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}. \qquad (7.4)$$

Then, for a measurable partition $\Omega = \Omega_{\mathrm{e}} \cup \Omega_0$ *and*

$$\bar{v} := v_{\mathrm{e}}\chi_{\Omega_{\mathrm{e}}} + v_0\chi_{\Omega_0}, \qquad \bar{i} := i_{\mathrm{e}}\chi_{\Omega_{\mathrm{e}}} + i_0\chi_{\Omega_0}, \qquad (7.5)$$

the following assertions hold.

I) *For every* $\varepsilon > 0$ *there exists* $\delta > 0$ *and an equilibrium* $u^* := (v^*, i^*, 0, w^*, 0)$ *of* (3.3)–(3.5) *such that*

$$\|(v^*, i^*) - (\bar{v}, \bar{i})\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \varepsilon \quad \textit{whenever } |\Omega_0| \leq \delta.$$

II) *The equilibrium sets of* (3.3)–(3.5) *are noncompact in* $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$ *and* $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$.

Proof. The proof is organized in three steps.

Step 1. We show that there exists $\bar{\alpha} > 0$ such that, for every $b = (b_v, b_i) \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, the system of equations

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P_v(\bar{v}, \bar{i})\phi = b_v, \qquad (7.6)$$

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P_i(\bar{v}, \bar{i})\phi - J_6 A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(\bar{v})\phi_v = b_i$$

has a unique solution $\phi \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ that satisfies $\|\phi\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \bar{\alpha} \|b\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}$. This provides the required conditions of the implicit function theorem that is used in Step 2 to prove the existence of the equilibrium u^*. The proof proceeds by iteratively constructing a solution by starting from the solution of (7.3) and applying certain corrections at each iteration.

Let $\phi^{(0)} = (\phi_v^{(0)}, \phi_i^{(0)})$ be the solution of (7.3) for a given $b \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ and construct an approximate solution for (7.6) of the form $\phi^{(1)} := \phi^{(0)} + \phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}$, where $\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)} = (\phi_{\mathrm{r}_v}^{(1)}, \phi_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)})$ is the unique solution of

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_0, i_0) \phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)} = \left(\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}) - \partial_{(v,i)} P(v_0, i_0) \right) \phi^{(0)} \chi_{\Omega_0}. \tag{7.7}$$

Note that by assumption (iii) the unique solution $\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}$ exists and belongs to $\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$. The approximate solution $\phi^{(1)}$ solves

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{(v,i)} P_v(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) \phi^{(1)} &= b_v, \\ \partial_{(v,i)} P_i(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) \phi^{(1)} - J_6 A^{-1} \Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(\bar{v}) \phi_v^{(1)} &= b_i + b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)}, \end{aligned}$$

where $b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)} = (0, b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)})$,

$$b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)} := J_6 A^{-1} \Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \left[\left(\partial_v f(v_{\mathrm{e}}) - \partial_v f(v_0) \right) \phi_v^{(0)} - \partial_v f(v_0) \phi_{\mathrm{r}_v}^{(1)} \right] \chi_{\Omega_0} \tag{7.8}$$

is the remainder resulting from the approximation error in $\phi^{(1)}$.

Now, note that by assumption (iv) there exists $\alpha_0 := \alpha > 0$ such that

$$\left\| \phi^{(0)} \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \alpha_0 \left\| b \right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}. \tag{7.9}$$

Moreover, since by assumption (ii) we have $(v_0, i_0) \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, it is immediate from the definition of P_v and P_i, given by (7.1), that $\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_0, i_0)$ is bounded. This, along with assumption (iii) and (7.9), implies that the solution $\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}$ of (7.7) satisfies

$$\left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \zeta_1 \left\|\phi^{(0)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \alpha_1 \left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \tag{7.10}$$

for some $\zeta_1, \alpha_1 > 0$.

Next, note that since $A^{-1} : \mathcal{L}_w^2 \to \mathcal{H}_w^2$ is a bounded operator and f is smooth, the definition of $b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)}$, given by (7.8), implies that $b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)} \in H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega; \mathbb{R}^4)$. Moreover, it further implies by the Sobolev embedding theorems [42, Thm. 6.6-1] that $b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)} \in C^{0,\lambda}_{\text{per}}(\overline{\Omega}, \mathbb{R}^4)$ for all $\lambda \in (0,1)$ and, in particular, $\left\|b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \zeta_2 \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)}\right\|_{H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^4)}$ for some $\zeta_2 > 0$. Therefore, using (7.9) and (7.10), there exist $\zeta_3, \zeta_4, \zeta_5, \beta_1 > 0$ such that

$$\begin{aligned} \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} &\leq \zeta_2 \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(1)}\right\|_{H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^4)} \leq \zeta_3 \left(\left\|\phi_v^{(0)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2} + \left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}_v}^{(1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2}\right) \\ &\leq \zeta_4 \left\|\phi^{(0)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2} \leq \zeta_5 |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \left\|\phi^{(0)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \\ &\leq \beta_1 |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} . \end{aligned} \tag{7.11}$$

Now, for $m = 2, 3, \ldots$, let $\phi^{(m)} := \phi^{(m-1)} + \phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}$, where $\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}$ is the unique solution of

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_0, i_0) \phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)} = -b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m-1)} \chi_{\Omega_0}.$$

It follows immediately that, for some $\eta > 0$,

$$\left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \eta \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m-1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}, \quad m = 2, 3, \ldots. \tag{7.12}$$

Moreover, $\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}$ solves the system of equations

$$\begin{aligned} \partial_{(v,i)} P_v(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) \phi^{(m)} &= b_v, \\ \partial_{(v,i)} P_i(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) \phi^{(m)} - J_6 A^{-1} \Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(\bar{v}) \phi_v^{(m)} &= b_i + b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(m)}, \end{aligned}$$

where

$$b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(m)} := -J_6 A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(v_0)\phi_{\mathrm{r}_v}^{(m)}\chi_{\Omega_0}, \quad m = 2, 3, \ldots .$$

Using the Sobolev embedding theorems and (7.12), the remainder $b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)} = (0, b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(m)})$ satisfies, for some $\zeta_6, \zeta_7, \zeta_8, \beta > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned} \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} &\leq \zeta_6 \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}_i}^{(m)}\right\|_{H^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R}^4)} \leq \zeta_7 \left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^2 \times \mathcal{L}_i^2} \leq \zeta_8 |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \\ &\leq \beta |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m-1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}, \quad m = 2, 3, \ldots, \end{aligned}$$

which, letting $\kappa := \beta|\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and recalling (7.11), implies

$$\left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \beta_1 |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \kappa^{(m-1)} \left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}, \quad m = 2, 3, \ldots . \tag{7.13}$$

Now, let $|\Omega_0| < \bar{\delta}$, $\bar{\delta} > 0$, and choose $\bar{\delta}$ such that $\kappa < 1$. Note that β, and consequently the choice of $\bar{\delta}$ and the value of κ, do not depend on b and the specific form of the partition $\Omega = \Omega_{\mathrm{e}} \cup \Omega_0$. Therefore, it follows that $\left\|b_{\mathrm{r}}^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \to 0$ as $m \to \infty$, and hence $\phi^{(m)}$ converges to a solution ϕ for (7.6) when $|\Omega_0| < \bar{\delta}$. Moreover, (7.9)–(7.13) imply

$$\begin{aligned} \left\|\phi^{(m)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} &\leq \left\|\phi^{(0)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} + \left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(1)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} + \sum_{l=2}^{m} \left\|\phi_{\mathrm{r}}^{(l)}\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \\ &\leq \left[\alpha_0 + \alpha_1 + \eta\beta_1 |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \sum_{l=2}^{m} \kappa^{(l-2)}\right] \left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}, \end{aligned}$$

and hence, taking the limit as $m \to \infty$, there exists $\bar{\alpha} > 0$, independent of the form of the partition, such that

$$\left\|\phi\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \bar{\alpha} \left\|b\right\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty}. \tag{7.14}$$

To prove the solution constructed above for (7.6) is unique, first note that by assumption (i) the operator A becomes a scalar operator given by $A = (-\frac{3}{2}\Delta + \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 I)$. Then, considering the structure of the matrix parameters given by (3.7) and reinspecting the expanded form (3.1), the system of equations (7.6) can be transformed to a system composed of five algebraic equations and one PDE by pre-multiplying the second equation in (7.6) by the elementary matrix

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & \multirow{2}{*}{$0_{2\times 2}$} \\ -\dfrac{M_{\mathrm{EI}}}{M_{\mathrm{EE}}} & 1 & \\ \hline \multicolumn{2}{c|}{0_{2\times 2}} & I_{2\times 2} \end{array}\right].$$

This follows from the fact that the scalar operator $(-\frac{3}{2}\Delta + \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 I)^{-1}$ acts only on one of the unknowns, namely, $\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}}$. Now, since $\partial_{(v,i)} P(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ is nonsingular by assumption (iii), the five unknowns $\phi_i = (\phi_{i_{\mathrm{EE}}}, \phi_{i_{\mathrm{EI}}}, \phi_{i_{\mathrm{IE}}}, \phi_{i_{\mathrm{II}}})$ and $\phi_{v_{\mathrm{I}}}$ can be uniquely determined in terms of $\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}}$ by elementary algebraic operations. Consequently, (7.6) is reduced to a scalar PDE of the form

$$p(\bar{v}, \bar{i})\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} - \left(-\frac{3}{2}\Delta + \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 I\right)^{-1} \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{EE}} \partial_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\bar{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) \phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} = \hat{h},$$

where $\hat{h} \in L_{\mathrm{per}}^{\infty}(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ is given by the same elementary operations on b, and $p(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$ is nonzero almost everywhere in Ω, since elementary operations do not disrupt the nonsingularity of $\partial_{(v,i)} P(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$.

Next, dividing by $p(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$, the above equation can be written as

$$(I - K)\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} = h, \tag{7.15}$$

where $K := p(\bar{v}, \bar{i})^{-1} \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 \mathrm{M}_{\mathrm{EE}} \partial_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} f(\bar{v}_{\mathrm{E}}) (-\frac{3}{2}\Delta + \Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}^2 I)^{-1}$ and $h := p(\bar{v}, \bar{i})^{-1} \hat{h}$. The operator $K : L_{\mathrm{per}}^2(\Omega, \mathbb{R}) \to L_{\mathrm{per}}^2(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ is linear, self-adjoint, and compact by the Rellich–

Kondrachov compact embedding theorems [42, Thm. 6.6-3]. The existence of solutions of (7.6) proved above guarantees the existence of a solution $\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}} \in L^\infty_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$ for every $h \in L^\infty_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega, \mathbb{R})$, which implies $L^\infty_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega, \mathbb{R}) \subset \mathrm{Range}(I - K)$. However, $\mathrm{Range}(I - K) = \mathrm{Kernel}(I - K^*)^\perp = \mathrm{Kernel}(I - K)^\perp$ by the Fredholm alternative [43, Thm. 5, App. D], and hence $L^\infty_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega, \mathbb{R}) \cap \mathrm{Kernel}(I - K) = \{0\}$. This proves the uniqueness of bounded solutions of (7.15), and consequently the uniqueness of solutions of (7.6) for every $b = (b_v, b_i) \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_v \times \mathcal{L}^\infty_i$.

Step 2. We prove assertion (I) using the implicit function theorem. Note that since $u_{\mathrm{e}} := (v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}, 0, w_{\mathrm{e}}, 0)$ is an equilibrium of (3.3)–(3.5), we have

$$P_v(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}) = 0, \quad P_i(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}) = J_6 w_{\mathrm{e}}, \quad w_{\mathrm{e}} = A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v_{\mathrm{e}}). \tag{7.16}$$

We seek an equilibrium $u^* := (v^*, i^*, 0, w^*, 0)$ such that

$$v^* = \bar{v} + \phi_v, \quad i^* = \bar{i} + \phi_i,$$

where $\phi := (\phi_v, \phi_i) \in \mathcal{L}^\infty_v \times \mathcal{L}^\infty_i$ is a small corrector function that satisfies

$$P_v(v^*, i^*) = 0, \quad P_i(v^*, i^*) = J_6 w^*, \quad w^* = A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^*). \tag{7.17}$$

Note that (7.2), (7.5), and (7.16) imply

$$P_v(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = 0, \quad P_i(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = J_6 w_{\mathrm{e}}, \quad v_{\mathrm{e}} = \bar{v} - (v_0 - v_{\mathrm{e}})\chi_{\Omega_0}.$$

Therefore, the system of equations (7.17) is equivalent to

(7.18)

$$\begin{aligned} &P_v(\bar{v} + \phi_v, \bar{i} + \phi_i) - P_v(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = 0, \\ &\; P_i(\bar{v} + \phi_v, \bar{i} + \phi_i) - P_i(\bar{v}, \bar{i}) = J_6 A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \big(f(\bar{v} + \phi_v) - f(\bar{v} - (v_0 - v_{\mathrm{e}})\chi_{\Omega_0})\big), \end{aligned}$$

which, by the implicit function theorem [42, Thm. 7.13-1], has a unique solution $\phi \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, since (7.6) has a unique solution in $\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ for every $b \in \mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, as proved in Step 1. Moreover, it is immediate from the definition of the Fréchet derivative of the mappings P_i and P_v that the solution of (7.18) is arbitrarily close to the solution of (7.6) with

$$b := (0, J_6 A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 \partial_v f(\bar{v})(v_0 - v_{\mathrm{e}}))\chi_{\Omega_0},$$

provided these solutions are sufficiently small. This is ensured by (7.14) for small $|\Omega_0|$, since $\|b\|_{\mathcal{L}_v^\infty \times \mathcal{L}_i^\infty} \leq \zeta |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}}$ for some $\zeta > 0$. Therefore, it follows that assertion (I) holds for some $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) \leq \bar{\delta}$.

Step 3. We prove assertion (II) using the fact that $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) > 0$ in assertion (I) is independent of the specific form of the partition $\Omega = \Omega_{\mathrm{e}} \cup \Omega_0$. Figure 7.1 can be used to visualize the arguments of the proof.

Let

$$\varepsilon := \frac{1}{3} \operatorname*{ess\,inf}_{x\in\Omega} \|(v_{\mathrm{e}}(x), i_{\mathrm{e}}(x)) - (v_0(x), i_0(x))\|_\infty > 0 \tag{7.19}$$

in assertion (I), and let $\delta = \delta(\varepsilon) > 0$ be the corresponding bound on the size of the partitions that satisfies the result of assertion (I). Note that $\varepsilon > 0$ by assumption (ii). Moreover, let $\mathscr{M}(\Omega)$ denote the set of all measurable subsets of Ω and define

$$\mathscr{P}_\delta(\Omega) := \{(\Omega_{\mathrm{e}}, \Omega_0) \in \mathscr{M}(\Omega) \times \mathscr{M}(\Omega) : \Omega_{\mathrm{e}} = \Omega \setminus \Omega_0, |\Omega_0| \leq \delta\}.$$

Let $\Theta_\delta(\Omega) \subset \mathscr{P}_\delta(\Omega)$ such that, for every $\tilde{\theta} = (\tilde{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}}, \tilde{\Omega}_0) \in \Theta_\delta(\Omega)$ and $\hat{\theta} = (\hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}}, \hat{\Omega}_0) \in \Theta_\delta(\Omega)$, we have $|\tilde{\Omega}_0 \triangle \hat{\Omega}_0| > \frac{1}{2}\delta$. Note that $\Theta_\delta(\Omega)$ is an uncountable set that can be viewed as an index set enumerating all measurable partitions $\Omega = \Omega_{\mathrm{e}} \cup \Omega_0$, $|\Omega_0| \leq \delta$, which are distinct in the sense of measure by a factor of at least $\frac{1}{2}\delta$.

Now, it follows from assertion (I) that, for every $\tilde{\theta} \neq \hat{\theta} \in \Theta_\delta(\Omega)$, there exist equilibria $u_{\tilde{\theta}} := (v_{\tilde{\theta}}, i_{\tilde{\theta}}, 0, w_{\tilde{\theta}}, 0)$ and $u_{\hat{\theta}} := (v_{\hat{\theta}}, i_{\hat{\theta}}, 0, w_{\hat{\theta}}, 0)$ such that

$$\begin{aligned}
\operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}} \cap \hat{\Omega}_0)} \left\| (v_{\hat{\theta}}(x), i_{\hat{\theta}}(x)) - (v_0(x), i_0(x)) \right\|_\infty &\leq \varepsilon, \\
\operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_0 \cap \hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}})} \left\| (v_{\hat{\theta}}(x), i_{\hat{\theta}}(x)) - (v_{\mathrm{e}}(x), i_{\mathrm{e}}(x)) \right\|_\infty &\leq \varepsilon, \\
\operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}} \cap \hat{\Omega}_0)} \left\| (v_{\tilde{\theta}}(x), i_{\tilde{\theta}}(x)) - (v_{\mathrm{e}}(x), i_{\mathrm{e}}) \right\|_\infty &\leq \varepsilon, \\
\operatorname*{ess\,sup}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_0 \cap \hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}})} \left\| (v_{\tilde{\theta}}(x), i_{\tilde{\theta}}(x)) - (v_0(x), i_0) \right\|_\infty &\leq \varepsilon.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, noting that $\tilde{\Omega}_0 \triangle \hat{\Omega}_0 = (\tilde{\Omega}_0 \cap \hat{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}}) \cup (\tilde{\Omega}_{\mathrm{e}} \cap \hat{\Omega}_0)$ and recalling the definition of ε given by (7.19),

$$\operatorname*{ess\,inf}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_0 \triangle \hat{\Omega}_0)} \left\| (v_{\tilde{\theta}}(x), i_{\tilde{\theta}}(x)) - (v_{\hat{\theta}}(x), i_{\hat{\theta}}(x)) \right\|_\infty \geq \varepsilon,$$

which further implies

$$\begin{aligned}
\left\| (v_{\tilde{\theta}}, i_{\tilde{\theta}}) - (v_{\hat{\theta}}, i_{\hat{\theta}}) \right\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v \times \mathcal{L}^2_i} &\geq |\tilde{\Omega}_0 \triangle \hat{\Omega}_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \operatorname*{ess\,inf}_{x \in (\tilde{\Omega}_0 \triangle \hat{\Omega}_0)} \left\| (v_{\tilde{\theta}}(x), i_{\tilde{\theta}}(x)) - (v_{\hat{\theta}}(x), i_{\hat{\theta}}(x)) \right\|_\infty \\
&> \left(\frac{1}{2} \delta \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \varepsilon.
\end{aligned}$$

Since $\tilde{\theta}$ and $\hat{\theta}$ are arbitrary, it follows that the set $\mathcal{E} := \{u_\theta\}_{\theta \in \Theta_\delta(\Omega)}$ composed of the equilibria u_θ constructed as above is an uncountable discrete subset of the equilibrium sets of (3.3)–(3.5) in $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{s}}$ and $\mathcal{U}_{\mathrm{w}}$. This completes the proof. ■

Remark 7.6 (Alternative assumptions for Theorem 7.5). According to the proof of Theorem 7.5, some of the assumptions of this theorem can be relaxed or replaced by alternative assumptions as follows.

- Assumption (i) is used to prove the uniqueness of solutions of (7.6). Without this assumption, the operator A is not a scalar operator and (7.6) cannot be reduced to a scalar PDE using elementary algebraic operations. The operator K representing the system of PDEs in this case would not be self-adjoint, and hence, application of the Fredholm alternative would not immediately imply uniqueness of the solutions. However, an alternative assumption to assumption (i) can be made on the adjoint of the operator K, so that the uniqueness of the solutions of (7.6) is still ensured using the Fredholm alternative. We avoid this complication, since the fiber decay scale constants Λ_{EE} and Λ_{EI} are always assumed to be equal in the practical applications of the model [47].

- In assumption (ii), it suffices to have $\operatorname{ess\,inf}_{x\in\mathscr{X}} \|(v_{\mathrm{e}}(x), i_{\mathrm{e}}(x)) - (v_0(x), i_0(x))\|_\infty > 0$, where $\mathscr{X}$ is any measurable subset of Ω with positive measure. Correspondingly, it suffices that the nonsingularity in assumption (iii) holds almost everywhere on an open subset $\mathscr{Y} \supset \mathscr{X}$ of Ω. In this case, the proof is modified by restricting $\mathscr{P}_\delta(\Omega)$ to its subset consisting of partitions with $\Omega_0 \subset \mathscr{X}$. The index set $\Theta_\delta(\Omega)$ remains uncountable, and the noncompactness result of the theorem holds with no change.

Remark 7.7 (Nonexistence of a global attractor). Suppose that the assumptions of Theorem 7.5 hold for an input g and an equilibrium u_{e} that further satisfy $i_{\mathrm{e}}, w_{\mathrm{e}} > \varepsilon_1$, $\varepsilon_1 > 0$, almost everywhere in Ω and $g \in \mathcal{D}_g$, where $\mathcal{D}_g$ is given by (5.20). Note that u_{e} then belongs to $\mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}$. Then, the equation $P_i(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}) = J_6 w_{\mathrm{e}}$ in the equilibrium equations (7.16) implies that $P_i(v_{\mathrm{e}}, i_{\mathrm{e}}) \geq 0$, and hence $P_i(v_0, i_0) \geq 0$ in (7.2). Therefore, it follows from the definition of P_i given by (7.1) that every solution i_0 of (7.2) satisfies $i_0 > \varepsilon_2$, $\varepsilon_2 > 0$, almost everywhere in Ω. Then, by definition of $(\bar{v}, \bar{i})$, given by (7.5), all equilibria u^* constructed by assertion (I) of Theorem 7.5 satisfy $i^* > 0$ almost everywhere in Ω when δ is sufficiently small. Also, the equilibrium

Table 7.1: A set of biophysically plausible parameter values for the model (3.1) for which Theorem 7.5 implies nonexistence of a global attractor [47, Table VI, col. 2]. The parameters $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}$, and $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{II}}$ are, respectively, the mean values of the physiologically shaped random inputs g_{EE}, g_{EI}, g_{IE}, and g_{II} used in [47].

Parameter	τ_{E}	τ_{I}	V_{EE}	V_{EI}	V_{IE}	V_{II}	γ_{EE}
Value	$11.787{\times}10^{-3}$	$138.25{\times}10^{-3}$	61.264	51.703	-7.127	-12.679	816.04
Parameter	γ_{EI}	γ_{IE}	γ_{II}	Υ_{EE}	Υ_{EI}	Υ_{IE}	Υ_{II}
Value	261.29	219.09	40.575	0.92695	1.3012	0.19053	0.94921
Parameter	N_{EE}	N_{EI}	N_{IE}	N_{II}	ν	$\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}$	M_{EE}
Value	3893.0	3326.8	839.39	682.41	101.78	0.96545	4013.5
Parameter	M_{EI}	F_{E}	F_{I}	μ_{E}	μ_{I}	σ_{E}	σ_{I}
Value	1544.3	266.44	300.65	30.628	19.383	5.6536	3.3140
Parameter	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{II}}$			
Value	83.190	6407.5	0	0			

equations $w_{\mathrm{e}} = A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v_{\mathrm{e}})$ and $w^* = A^{-1}\Lambda^2 \mathrm{M} J_8 f(v^*)$ imply that

$$\begin{aligned}\|w^* - w_{\mathrm{e}}\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_w} &\leq \beta_1 \|w^* - w_{\mathrm{e}}\|_{\mathcal{H}^2_w} \leq \beta_2 \|v^* - v_{\mathrm{e}}\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} \leq \beta_2 \left(\|v^* - \bar{v}\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v} + \|\bar{v} - v_{\mathrm{e}}\|_{\mathcal{L}^2_v}\right) \\ &\leq \beta_2 \left(|\Omega|^{\frac{1}{2}} \|v^* - \bar{v}\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_v} + |\Omega_0|^{\frac{1}{2}} \|(v_0 - v_{\mathrm{e}})\chi_{\Omega_0}\|_{\mathcal{L}^\infty_v}\right)\end{aligned}$$

for some $\beta_1, \beta_2 > 0$, and hence $w^* > 0$ almost everywhere in Ω, when δ is sufficiently small. Therefore, assertion (II) of Theorem 7.5 ensures existence of a biophysically plausible noncompact set of equilibria $\mathcal{E} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} \subset \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}$. This, in particular, implies that in the case where the assumptions of Theorem 7.5 are satisfied for some u_{e} and g as given above, the semigroups $\left\{S_{\mathrm{w}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{w}}\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\left\{S_{\mathrm{s}}(t) : \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}} \to \mathcal{D}_{\mathrm{s}}\right\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ are not asymptotically compact, and hence they do not possess a global attractor.

The assumptions of Theorem 7.5 are relatively straightforward to check for the spatially homogeneous equilibria of (3.3)–(3.5). Consider the set of values given in Table 7.1 for the parameters of the model, which are suggested in [47, Table VI, col. 2] as a set of parameter values leading to physiologically reasonable behavior of the model. The parameters $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}$, and $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{II}}$ are the mean values of the physiologically shaped random signals used in [47] as the subcortical inputs g_{EE}, g_{EI}, g_{IE}, and g_{II}, respectively. Here, we set $g(t,x) = (\bar{g}_{\text{EE}}, \bar{g}_{\text{EI}}, \bar{g}_{\text{IE}}, \bar{g}_{\text{II}})$ for all x and t, and check the assumptions of Theorem 7.5 for a spatially homogeneous equilibrium of (3.3)–(3.5).

Assumption (i) holds with $\Lambda_{\text{EE}} = \Lambda_{\text{EE}} = 0.96545$, as given in Table 7.1. Solving the equations $P_v(v_\text{e}, i_\text{e}) = 0$, $P_i(v_\text{e}, i_\text{e}) = J_6 w_\text{e}$, and $w_\text{e} = \text{M} J_8 f(v_\text{e})$, a spatially homogeneous equilibrium is calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} v_\text{e} &= (1.9629, 6.5150), \\ i_\text{e} &= (5.2552, 100.2372, 2.4493, 53.5665), \\ w_\text{e} &= (821.7136, 316.1760). \end{aligned}$$

Note that the numbers given here should actually be regarded as constant functions over Ω. Assumption (ii) then holds by finding a solution $(v_0, i_0) \neq (v_\text{e}, i_\text{e})$ for (7.2) as

$$v_0 = (10.9417, 7.7148), \quad i_0 = (25.9005, 177.5837, 4.0757, 89.1352).$$

Assumption (iii) also holds with the following nonsingular matrix-valued functions:

$$\partial_{(v,i)} P(v_\text{e}, i_\text{e}) = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cccc} 1.4294 & 0 & -0.9680 & 0 & 1.2754 & 0 \\ 0 & 7.1635 & 0 & -0.8740 & 0 & 1.5138 \\ \hline -199.2222 & 0 & 323.8625 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -170.2472 & 0 & 0 & 73.8727 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -440.3409 & 0 & 0 & 423.0237 & 0 \\ 0 & -357.9898 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 15.7254 \end{array}\right],$$

$$\partial_{(v,i)}P(v_0,i_0)=\left[\begin{array}{cc|cccc} 1.9946 & 0 & -0.8214 & 0 & 2.5352 & 0 \\ 0 & 11.4648 & 0 & -0.8508 & 0 & 1.6085 \\ \hline -1858.395 & 0 & 323.8625 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1588.109 & 0 & 0 & 73.8727 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -730.7260 & 0 & 0 & 423.0237 & 0 \\ 0 & -594.0680 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 15.7254 \end{array}\right].$$

To check assumption (iv), note that, for every $b=(b_v,b_i)\in\mathcal{L}_v^\infty\times\mathcal{L}_i^\infty$, elementary algebraic operations reduce (7.3) to

$$\begin{aligned} &\phi_{v_{\mathrm{E}}}=0.6287\phi i_{\mathrm{EE}}+h_{v_{\mathrm{E}}},\quad \phi_{v_{\mathrm{I}}}=0.0521\phi i_{\mathrm{EE}}+h_{v_{\mathrm{I}}},\\ &\phi_{i_{\mathrm{EI}}}=2.4834\phi i_{\mathrm{EE}}+h_{i_{\mathrm{EI}}},\quad \phi_{i_{\mathrm{IE}}}=0.0543\phi i_{\mathrm{EE}}+h_{i_{\mathrm{IE}}},\quad \phi_{i_{\mathrm{II}}}=1.1870\phi i_{\mathrm{EE}}+h_{i_{\mathrm{II}}}, \end{aligned}\tag{7.20}$$

and the scalar PDE

$$(I-D)\phi_{i_{\mathrm{EE}}}=h_{i_{\mathrm{EE}}},\quad D:=0.6060\left(-\frac{3}{2}\Delta+0.96545^2I\right)^{-1},\tag{7.21}$$

where $h=(h_v,h_i)\in\mathcal{L}_v^\infty\times\mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ is the result of the same algebraic operations on b. Now, note that since $-\Delta$ is a nonnegative operator in $H^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})$, it follows from the spectral theory of bounded linear self-adjoint operators [43, App. D.6] that the spectrum of the operator $(I-D):L^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})\to L^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})$ lies entirely above $1-0.6060\times0.96545^{-2}=0.3498>0$. Therefore, the PDE (7.21) has a unique solution $\phi_{i_{\mathrm{EE}}}\in L^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})$ for every $h_{i_{\mathrm{EE}}}\in L^2_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})\supset L^\infty_{\mathrm{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})$, and hence it follows from (7.20) that (7.3) has a unique solution $\phi=(\phi_v,\phi_i)\in\mathcal{L}_v^\infty\times\mathcal{L}_i^\infty$ for every $b\in\mathcal{L}_v^\infty\times\mathcal{L}_i^\infty$.

It remains to check (7.4). Using the spectral theory of bounded linear self-adjoint operators and the Cauchy–Schwarz inequality, we can write

$$\begin{aligned}\|\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|^2_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} &\leq \frac{1}{0.3498}\left((I-D)\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}, \phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\right)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} = \frac{1}{0.3498}\left(h_{i_{\text{EE}}}, \phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\right)_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq \frac{1}{0.3498}\|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})}\|\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})}.\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, there exists $\alpha_1 = \frac{1}{0.3498} > 0$ such that

$$\|\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \leq \alpha_1 \|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})}.$$

Now, using (7.21) and the Sobolev embedding theorems, we can write, for some $\alpha_2, \alpha_3 > 0$,

$$\begin{aligned}\|\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} &\leq \|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} + \|D\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq \|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} + \alpha_2\|D\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{H^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq \|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} + \alpha_3\|\phi_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq \|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} + \alpha_1\alpha_3\|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^2_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})} \\ &\leq (1+\alpha_1\alpha_3|\Omega|^{\frac{1}{2}})\|h_{i_{\text{EE}}}\|_{L^\infty_{\text{per}}(\Omega;\mathbb{R})},\end{aligned}$$

which, along with the algebraic equalities (7.20), implies (7.4). Hence, assumption (iv) holds.

It is now implied by Theorem 7.5 that the equilibrium sets of (3.3)–(3.5) are noncompact in $\mathcal{U}_\text{s}$ and $\mathcal{U}_\text{w}$. Moreover, it follows immediately from the equilibrium equations (7.16) and the definition of P_i given by (7.1) that, in general, all spatially homogeneous equilibria i_e and w_e are positive and, in particular, belong to $\mathcal{D}_\text{Bio} \cap \mathcal{D}_\text{s}$. Therefore, by Remark 7.7, the semigroups $\{S_\text{w}(t) : \mathcal{D}_\text{w} \to \mathcal{D}_\text{w}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ and $\{S_\text{s}(t) : \mathcal{D}_\text{s} \to \mathcal{D}_\text{s}\}_{t\in[0,\infty)}$ associated with (3.3)–(3.5) with parameter values given by Table 7.1 do not possess a global attractor.

It can be shown by similar calculations as above that the assumptions of Theorem 7.5 are satisfied by spatially homogeneous equilibria of the model for 3 other sets of parameter values out the 24 sets available in [47, Tables V and VI], namely, the sets given in [47, Table V, col. 2] and [47, Table VI, col. 10 and col. 12]. Moreover, it is likely that these assumptions or their possible alternatives suggested in Remark 7.6 would also hold for other sets of parameter values if we consider equilibria u_{e} and inputs g that are not homogeneous over Ω. Checking the assumptions of Theorem 7.5 in this case is, however, not straightforward.

CHAPTER 8

APPLICATION OF THE MODEL IN A COMPUTATIONAL STUDY OF THE RHYTHMIC ACTIVITY IN THE NEOCORTEX

The rhythmic patterns of variations in the electroencephalographic recordings from the scalp (EEG), or the electrocorticographic recordings from the surface of the neocortex (ECoG) demonstrate a salient feature of mesoscopic electrical activity in the neocortex. These *brain rhythms* correlate with the numerous states of healthy operation of the brain, and their possible distortion or disruption can be a signature of a certain disease. However, the physiological mechanism of generating the brain rhythms is not well-understood.

Brain rhythms are traditionally classified into five bands of frequency, namely, $0.5 - 4$ Hz delta band, $4 - 8$ Hz theta band, $8 - 13$ Hz alpha band, $13 - 30$ Hz beta band, and $30 - 80$ Hz gamma band. Moreover, slow rhythms of frequency $0.025 - 0.5$ Hz and fast rhythms of frequency $80 - 600$ Hz are also observed in the brain and have recently been classified into several bands [57].

The rhythmicity in the electrocortical activity is a dynamic phenomenon that can occur, possibly heterogeneously, in a wide area of the neocortex. Hence, a mathematical model of the brain rhythms should capture both spatial and temporal dynamics of the neocortex, as in the case of the mean field model investigated in this dissertation. To show the potentiality of the model in studying the mechanism of the generation of brain rhythms, in this section we rederive some of the computational results in [24] and analyze them in more detail. These results show that the model can generate alpha-band oscillations at the resting state, and gamma-band oscillations as a

Table 8.1: The set of biophysically plausible parameter values used for the computational analysis of the model (3.1) [47, Table V, col. 11]. The parameters $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}$, $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}$, and $\bar{g}_{\mathrm{II}}$ are, respectively, the mean values of the physiologically shaped random inputs g_{EE}, g_{EI}, g_{IE}, and g_{II} used in [47].

Parameter	τ_{E}	τ_{I}	V_{EE}	V_{EI}	V_{IE}	V_{II}	γ_{EE}
Value	32.209×10^{-3}	92.260×10^{-3}	79.5513	77.0967	-8.404	-9.413	122.68
Parameter	γ_{EI}	γ_{IE}	γ_{II}	Υ_{EE}	Υ_{EI}	Υ_{IE}	Υ_{II}
Value	982.51	293.10	111.40	0.29835	1.1465	1.2615	0.20143
Parameter	N_{EE}	N_{EI}	N_{IE}	N_{II}	ν	$\Lambda_{\mathrm{EE}}, \Lambda_{\mathrm{EI}}$	M_{EE}
Value	4204.4	3602.9	443.71	386.43	116.12	0.60890	3228.0
Parameter	M_{EI}	F_{E}	F_{I}	μ_{E}	μ_{I}	σ_{E}	σ_{I}
Value	2956.9	66.433	393.29	27.771	24.175	4.7068	2.9644
Parameter	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}$	$\bar{g}_{\mathrm{II}}$			
Value	2250.6	4363.4	0	0			

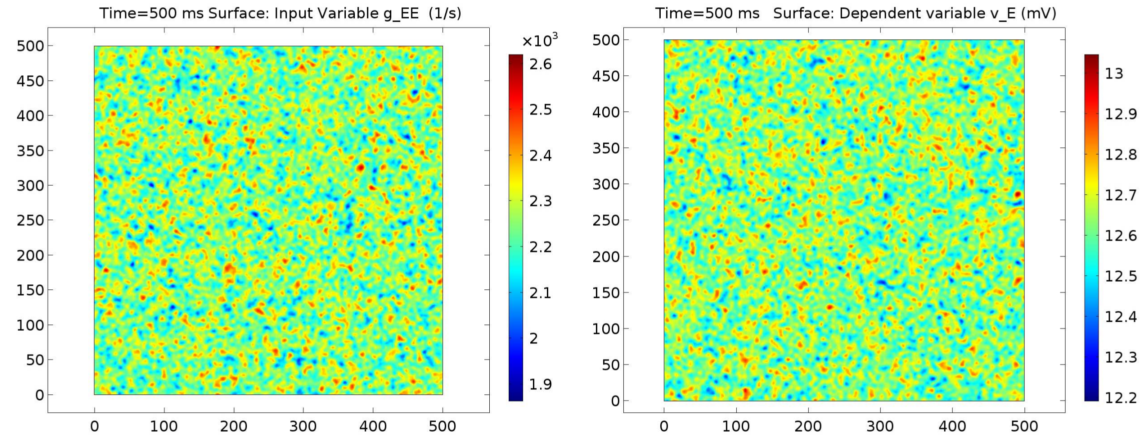
result of a Hopf bifurcation in its dynamics. We use MatCont [58] to perform the numerical bifurcation analysis and solve the equations of the model using COMSOL Multiphysics®.

8.1 The Framework for the Numerical Computations

For the computational analysis of the next sections, we consider (3.1) with a rectangular domain $\Omega = (0, 500) \times (0, 500)$ [mm^2] and with the set of parameter values given in Table 8.1. The spatially homogeneous equilibrium of the model can be calculated as

$$\begin{aligned} (v_{\mathrm{E}}, v_{\mathrm{I}})_{\mathrm{e}} &= (12.6326, 13.319), \\ (i_{\mathrm{EE}}, i_{\mathrm{EI}}, i_{\mathrm{IE}}, i_{\mathrm{II}})_{\mathrm{e}} &= (49.0506, 28.3164, 11.4371, 4.1846), \\ (w_{\mathrm{EE}}, w_{\mathrm{EI}})_{\mathrm{e}} &= (2245.7, 2057.1), \end{aligned} \tag{8.1}$$

where the numbers are regarded as constant functions over Ω. We set the time horizon of the numerical computations as $T = 500$ ms, and use COMSOL Multiphysics® to



(a) (b)

Figure 8.1: Comparison of the random input g_{EE} and the excitatory membrane potential v_{E} at the resting state. (a) The random input g_{EE} at $t = 500$ ms. (b) The excitatory membrane potential v_{E} at $t = 500$ ms.

solve (3.1) with the initial values and input variables as specified in the following sections.

To make quantitative observations on the transitions of the computed solutions in time, we extract samples from the solution data at different locations over Ω. To approximately simulate the averaging effect of an EEG probe, we extract solution data over squares of size 10×10 [mm^2], which we refer to as probes. We then consider the measurement of a probe as the average value of the solution over the square domain of the probe, which gives a scalar-valued signal over $[0, T]$.

8.2 Alpha Rhythms in the Resting State

To observe alpha-band oscillations, we consider the resting state with the nominal parameter values as given in Table 8.1. We drive the model by an input g_{EE} which varies randomly in space and time about the mean value $\bar{g}_{\text{EE}}$ given in Table 8.1. A snapshot of g_{EE} that depicts a sample of its pattern of variations over Ω is shown in Figure 8.1a. The other inputs g_{EI}, g_{IE}, and g_{II} take the constant values $\bar{g}_{\text{EI}}$, $\bar{g}_{\text{IE}}$, and $\bar{g}_{\text{IE}}$ given in Table 8.1, respectively. Finally, we set the initial values

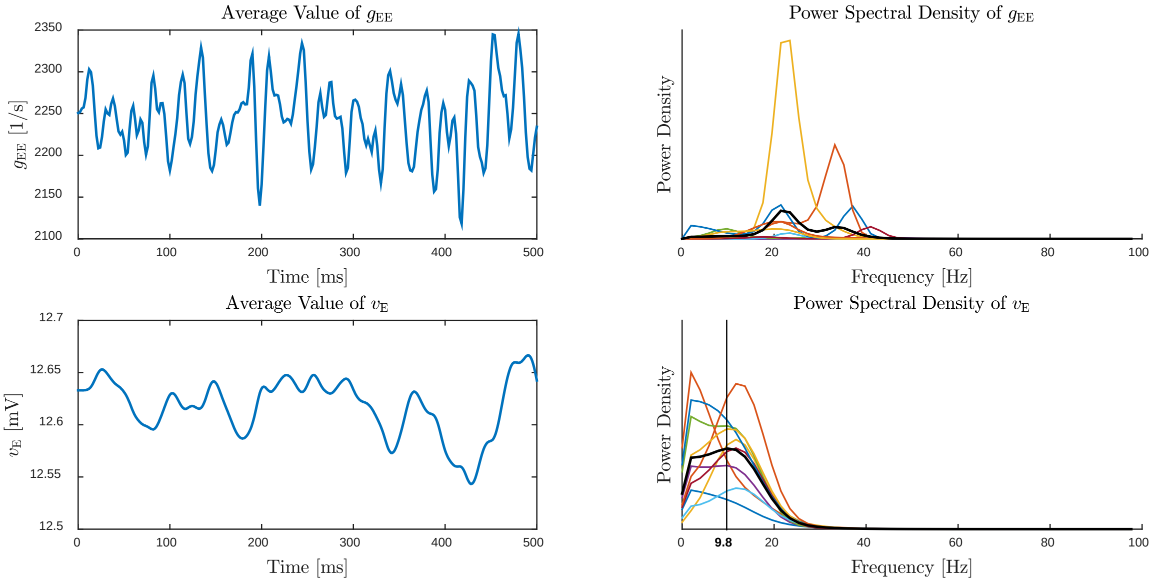


Figure 8.2: Time and frequency analysis of the alpha oscillations. Left: Measurements of the random input g_{EE} and the excitatory membrane potential v_{E} at a randomly chosen probe location. Right: Power spectral density of the measurements of 10 probes located randomly over the domain of the neocortex Ω. The solid black curve is the average of the power densities of the 10 measurements. The zero-frequency components (mean value) of all signals are removed.

$(v_{\mathrm{E}}, v_{\mathrm{I}}, i_{\mathrm{EE}}, i_{\mathrm{EI}}, i_{\mathrm{IE}}, i_{\mathrm{II}}, w_{\mathrm{EE}}, w_{\mathrm{EI}})\big|_{t=0}$ equal to their equilibrium values given by (8.1), and the initial values $\mathrm{d}_t(i_{\mathrm{EE}}, i_{\mathrm{EI}}, i_{\mathrm{IE}}, i_{\mathrm{II}}, w_{\mathrm{EE}}, w_{\mathrm{EI}})\big|_{t=0}$ equal to zero.

Figure 8.1b shows the result of the numerical computations for v_{E} at the final time step $t = 500$ ms. As compared with 8.1a, we observe that v_{E} does not develop any specific spatial pattern of activity and essentially shows a similar pattern of random variations as observed in the input g_{EE}. However, as shown in Figure 8.2, oscillations in v_{E} are primarily in the alpha band whereas the random input is oscillating at distinctively higher frequencies.

8.3 Emergence of Gamma Rhythms

In this section, we show that oscillations in gamma-band can emerge in the solutions of the model as a result of a Hopf bifurcation. In order to effectively use the available numerical bifurcation analysis tools, we consider a spatially homogeneous version

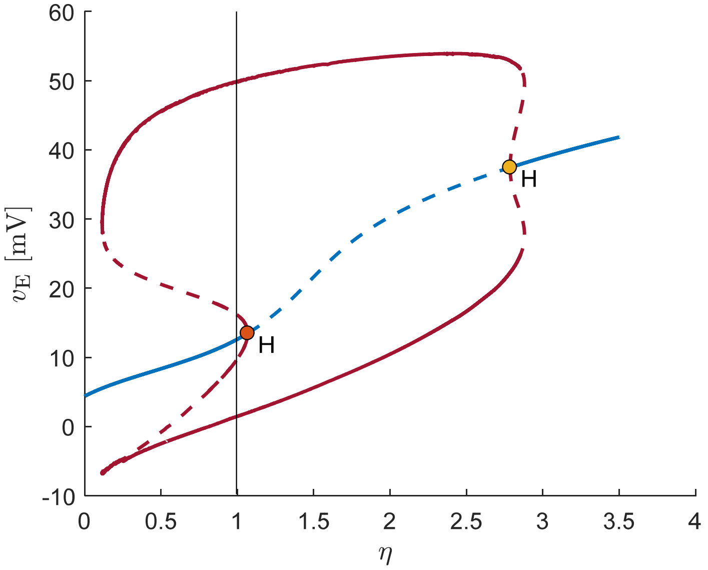
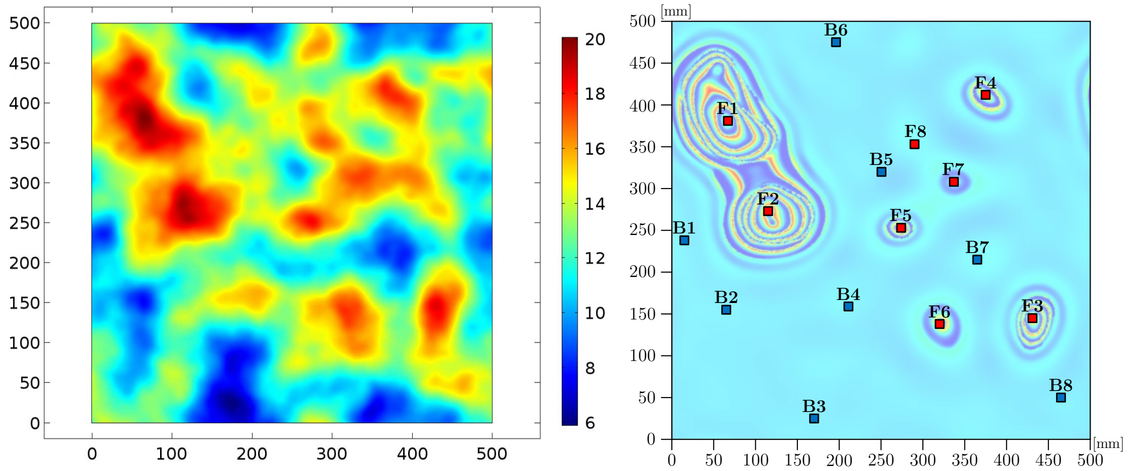


Figure 8.3: The bifurcation diagram associated with the spatially homogeneous ODE version of (3.1). The bifurcation parameter η indicates the percentage of the deviation of $\mathrm{N_{II}}$ from its nominal value. The curve of equilibria is shown in blue, and the curves of the maximum and minimum values of the limit cycles are shown in red. Solid lines denote stable equilibria and limit cycles, and dashed lines denote unstable equilibrai and limit cycles. The two Hopf bifurcation points are marked by H.

of the model (3.1). This corresponds to the solutions of the model with spatially homogeneous initial values and input variables. As a result, (3.1) is transformed to a fourteenth-order system of ODEs by setting $-\frac{3}{2}\nu^2\Delta = 0$.

Then, as in [24], we consider the bifurcation analysis of the resulting ODE system with respect to variations in the number of inhibitory to inhibitory intracortical connections $\mathrm{N_{II}}$. The excitation of interneurons in layer IV by thalamic afferents is suggested in [24] as a mechanism for presynaptic facilitation of the inhibitory to inhibitory connections, which can be modeled by increasing $\mathrm{N_{II}}$. Let $\mathrm{N_{II}} \Rightarrow \eta\mathrm{N_{II}}$ denote such variations, where $\eta > 0$ adjusts the percentage of the deviation of $\mathrm{N_{II}}$ from its nominal value given in table 8.1.

We use MatCont to rederive the bifurcation analysis given in [24]. The results are shown in Figure 8.3. As we see in Figure 8.3, increasing $\mathrm{N_{II}}$ from its nominal value by a factor of $\eta = 1.0676$, results in a Hopf bifurcation and the dynamics of the model



(a)

(b)

Figure 8.4: (a) The initial value of v_{E} in mV. (b) The locations of the measurement probes used to extract signals for the time and frequency analysis of the gamma oscillations.

undergoes a phase transition from damped oscillations about the stable equilibrium, to sustained oscillations on a stable limit cycle. These results, which are derived based on the spatially homogeneous ODE version of the model, predict the emergence of oscillatory patterns of activity in the original model (3.1) as a result of an increase in N_{II}. In the following, we verify this prediction by computing the solutions of (3.1), and we show that the frequency of these oscillations is in the gamma band.

For the numerical computations, we set N_{II} equal to $\eta = 1.07$ times the nominal value given in Table 8.1. We set $(g_{\mathrm{EE}}, g_{\mathrm{EI}}, g_{\mathrm{IE}}, g_{\mathrm{II}}) = (\bar{g}_{\mathrm{EE}}, \bar{g}_{\mathrm{EI}}, \bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}}, \bar{g}_{\mathrm{IE}})$ and perform the computations by considering the initial value of v_{E} equal to the function shown in Figure 8.4a, and the initial value of other variables equal to their equilibrium values given by (8.1).

Figure 8.5 shows snapshots of v_{E} at different instances of time. We observe that specific patterns of oscillations emerge spontaneously and propagate throughout the neocortex. To measure the power spectral density of these oscillations, we set eight measurement probes F1–F8 at the focal points of these spatial patterns, as shown in Figure 8.4b. Moreover, we set eight measurement probes B1–B8 at other background

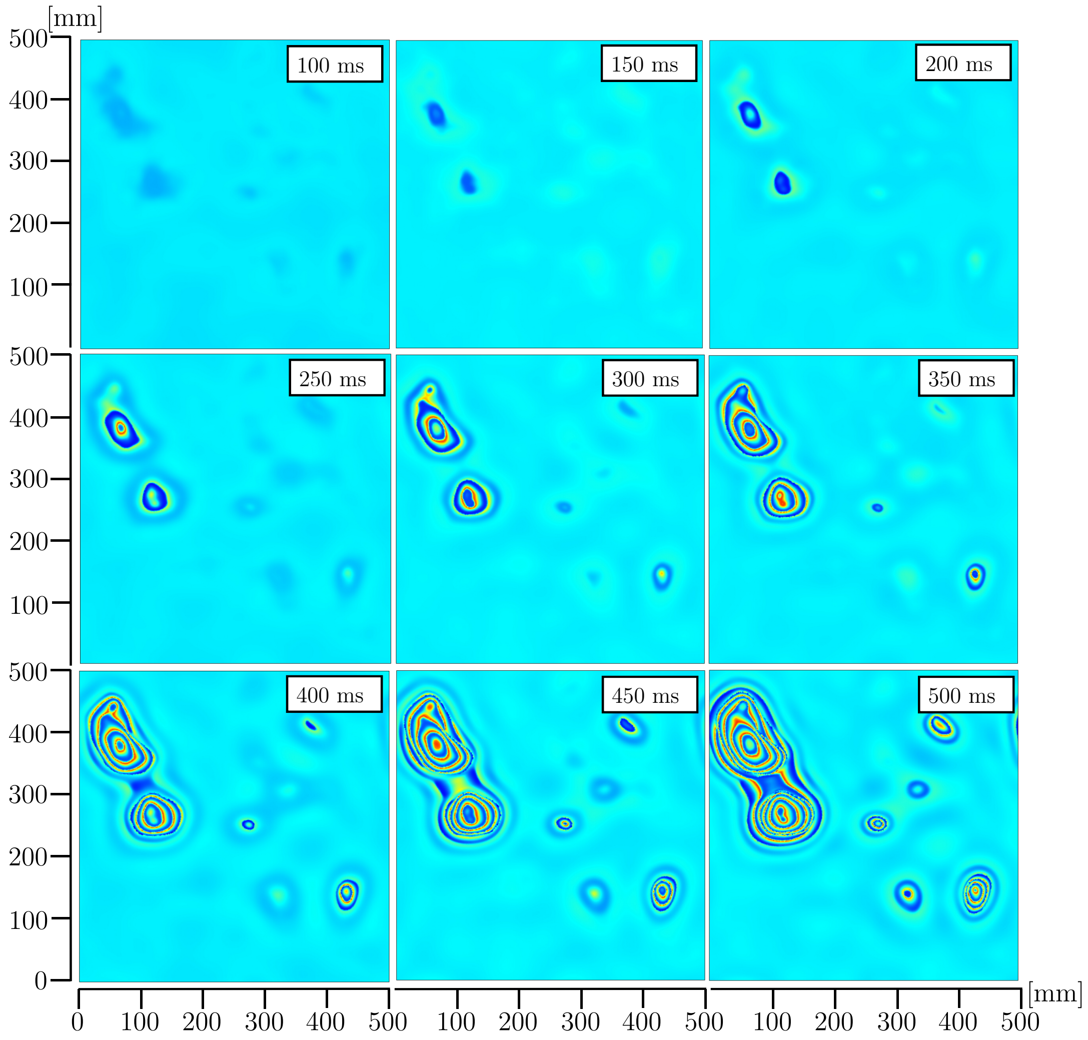
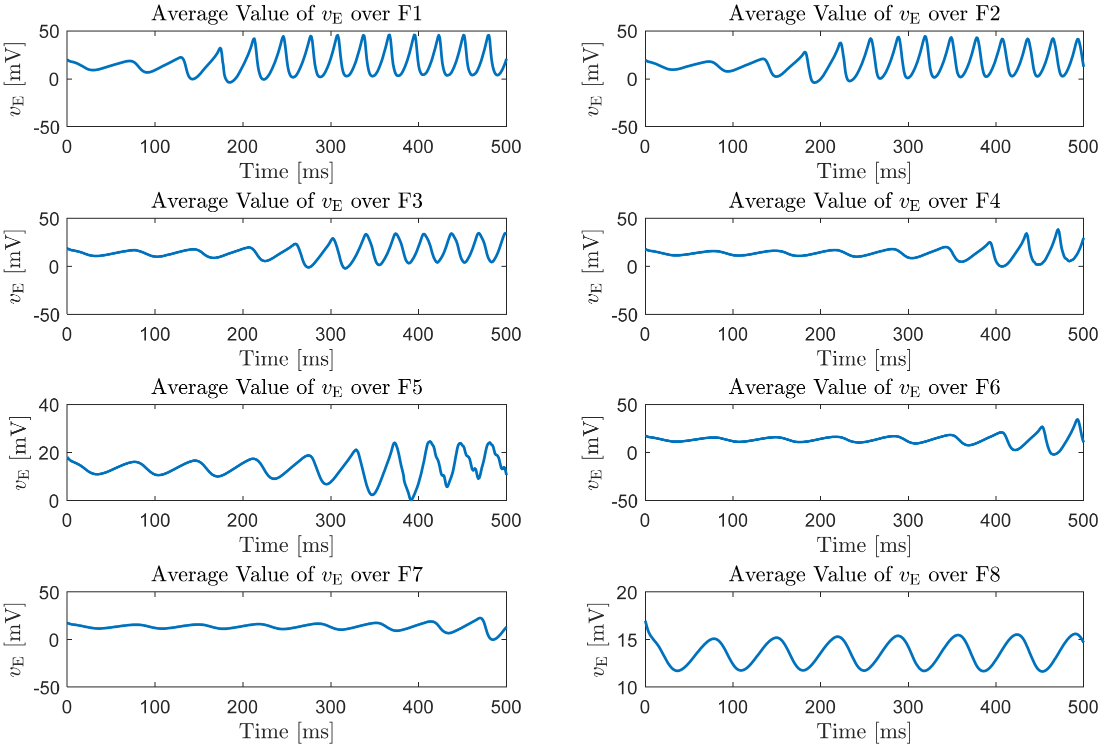


Figure 8.5: Emergence of gamma-band rhythmic activity. Snapshots are taken from v_{E} at every 50 ms.

locations to observe the oscillations in regions of the neocortex that do not develop any salient patterns of activity during the time horizon of the computation. The measurements of the probes are shown in Figures 8.6 and 8.7, and their power spectral densities are shown in Figure 8.8. We observe that the power spectrum of the spatial patterns of oscillations that emerge locally in the neocortex lies essentially in the gamma band, whereas oscillations at other areas remain in the alpha band. This observation shows that gamma oscillation can occur locally in the cortex, possibly in regions that are engaged with certain cognitive tasks.


Average Value of v_{E} over F1

Average Value of v_{E} over F2

Average Value of v_{E} over F3

Average Value of v_{E} over F4

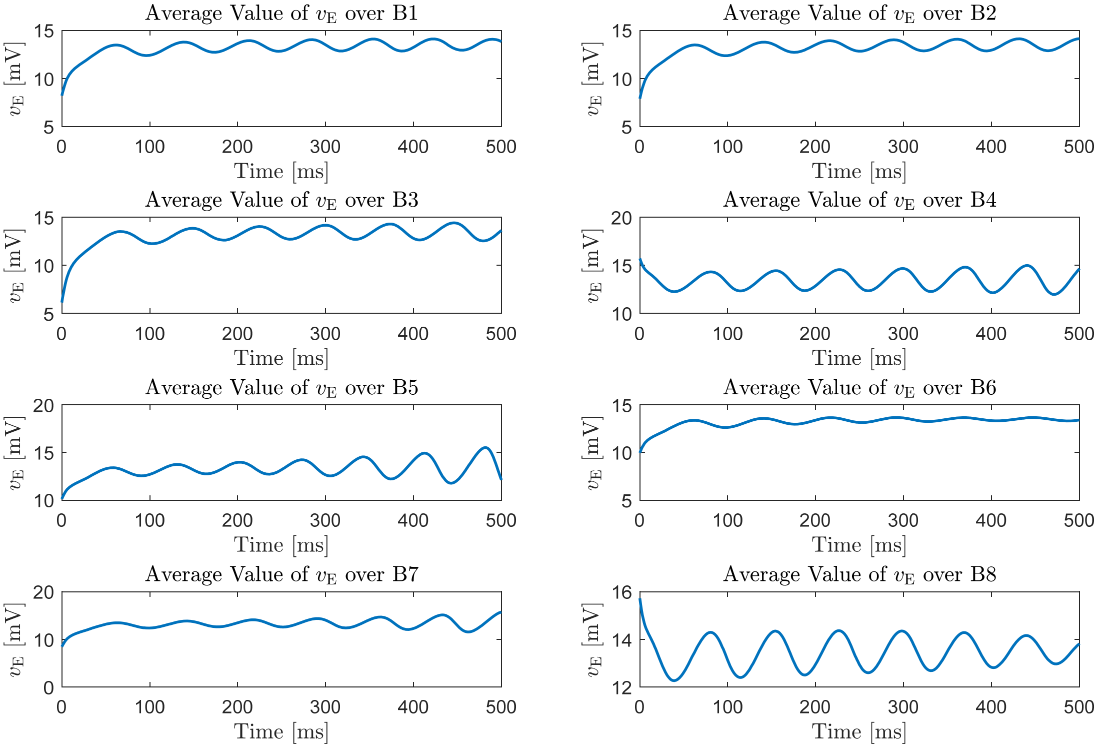
Average Value of v_{E} over F5

Average Value of v_{E} over F6

Average Value of v_{E} over F7

Average Value of v_{E} over F8

Figure 8.6: Measurements of F1–F8 probes at the locations shown in Figure 8.4b.


Average Value of v_{E} over B1

Average Value of v_{E} over B2

Average Value of v_{E} over B3

Average Value of v_{E} over B4

Average Value of v_{E} over B5

Average Value of v_{E} over B6

Average Value of v_{E} over B7

Average Value of v_{E} over B8

Figure 8.7: Measurements of B1–B8 probes at the locations shown in Figure 8.4b.

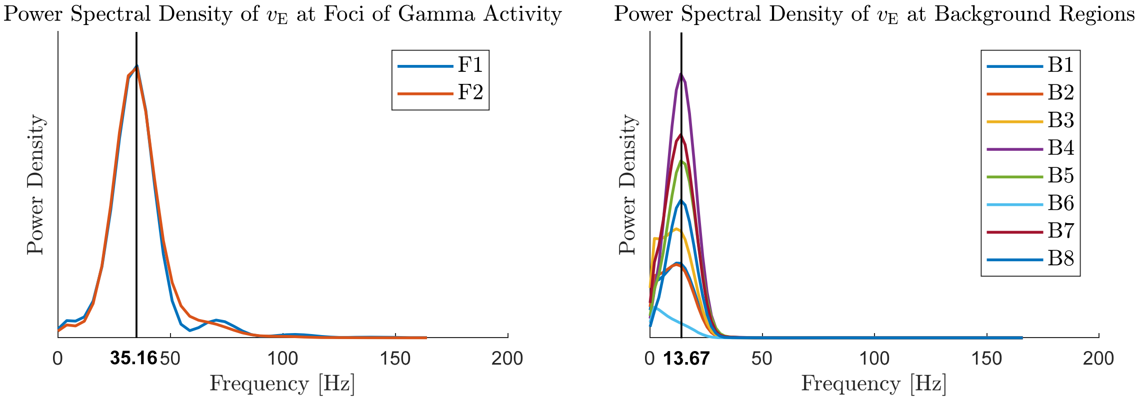


Figure 8.8: Power spectral density of the measurements of F1, F2, and B1–B8 probes shown in Figures 8.6 and 8.7. The zero-frequency components (mean value) of all signals are removed. Power densities are calculated based on the last 256 ms measurements of F1 and F2 probes, and the last 400 ms measurements of the B1–B8 probes, to remove the effect of the initial period of transitions on the spectrum.

CHAPTER 9

CONCLUSION AND POSSIBLE FUTURE RESEARCH

In this dissertation, we developed basic analytical results to establish a global attractor theory for the mean field model of the electroencephalogram proposed by Liley, Cadusch, and Dafilis [22]. We showed that the initial-boundary value problem associated with the model is well-posed in the weak and strong sense, and established sufficient conditions for the nonnegativity of the $i(x,t)$ and $w(x,t)$ components of the solution over the entire time horizon. Moreover, we proved existence of bounded absorbing sets for semigroups of weak and strong solutions, and discussed the challenges involved in proving the asymptotic compactness property for these semigroups. We showed that the equilibrium sets of the model are noncompact for some physiologically reasonable sets of parameter values which, in particular, implies nonexistence of a global attractor. Finally, we used the model to computationally study the emergence of fast gamma oscillations as a result of increases in the number of the inhibitory to inhibitory intracortical connections.

The conditions developed in this dissertation for ensuring nonnegativity of the solution components $i(x,t)$ and $w(x,t)$ over the entire infinite time horizon can be useful for computational analysis o f the model. Without using such mathematical analysis, it is impossible to ensure that the solutions computed numerically over a finite time horizon are biophysically plausible since, evidently, negativity might occur for time intervals beyond the finite time horizon of numerical computations. This fact has been overlooked in most of the available computational analysis of the model. However, in these computational studies, the initial values are usually set equal to a numerically computed spatially homogeneous equilibrium of the model, or equal to zero when no equilibrium is found numerically. In both cases, the preset initial values satisfy the sufficient conditions developed in Chapter 5 of this dissertation for biophysical plausibility of the solutions. It is perhaps an intractable problem to specify a set of biophysical initial values for a model of the EEG; however, analyzing a more diverse set of reasonable initial values satisfying the sufficient conditions developed in Chapter 5 can be beneficial in observing different behaviors of the model.

Existence of bounded absorbing sets is a desirable global property for a model of electrical activity in the neocortex. As stated in Remark 6.4, the EEG model investigated in this dissertation possesses this global property for its entire range of parameter values given in Table 3.1. Moreover, this property holds independently of the parameters of the firing rate functions, the number of intracortical and cortico-cortical connections, the mean Nernst potentials, and the membrane time constants, as observed in assumptions (i) and (ii) of Theorems 6.2 and 6.3.

The lack of space-dissipative terms in the ODE components (3.3) and (3.4) of the model is one of the major sources of difficulty in establishing a global attractor. Indeed, as discussed in Section 7.2, the $v(x,t)$ and $i(x,t)$ components of the solution can evolve discontinuously in space despite continuous evolution of the $w(x,t)$ component. Other than disrupting the asymptotic compactness property of the semigroups of solution operators, these space irregularities can predict sharp transitions in the $v(x,t)$ and $i(x,t)$ components of the solution, which can potentially be problematic in numerical computation of the solutions.

Slight modifications to the model that result in the presence of additional space-dissipative terms in the ODEs can improve the regularity of the solutions and can be of particular advantage in numerical computations. The fact that some of the equations of the model appear as ODEs is partially due to the simplifying assumption of *instantaneous* conduction through short-range fibers. Removing such simplifying assumptions, or considering a singularly perturbed version of (3.3) and (3.4) by artificially including additional diffusion terms $\varepsilon\Delta$, with sufficiently small ε, can be considered as potential modifications. Any such modifications should, however, maintain the neurophysiological plausibility of the model.

The regularization made by appropriate modifications to the model may result in the possibility of establishing the asymptotic compactness property. However, the analysis in Section 7.2 suggests that the resulting compact attractor would be of very high dimension for some sets of parameter values. Based on this observation, we can speculate that the noncompactness of the attracting sets shown in this dissertation can provide an explanation for the possibility of having a rich variety of behaviors for this model. Such diversity of complicated behaviors is indeed what one would expect from a model of the neocortex, the part of the brain that is presumed to be responsible for the extremely complicated perceptual and cognitive functionality of the brain.

The discussion in Section 7.1 provides an overview of some challenges involved in establishing the asymptotic compactness property of the global attracting set of the model using some standard approaches. However, it certainly does not totally rule out the possibility of establishing such results. Besides considering the regularization discussed above, further research can be done by using more advanced analysis techniques and different topologies, which may succeed in establishing the compactness property, and hence the existence of a global attractor. The complexity and the structure of the attractor can then be investigated, which can potentially result in important observations about the evolution of the spatio-temporal patterns of activity in the neocortex.

Finally, it should be noted that although the model investigated in this dissertation captures some major biophysical interactions in neuronal populations, it assumes an isotropic and homogeneous pattern of connectivity throughout the neocortex, which is not sufficiently realistic for some applications. Further research can be done on improving this model by considering anisotropic and sparse patterns of connectivity. Although such improvements may highly affect the analytical tractability of the model, they can yield more realistic computational results in practical applications of the model.

REFERENCES

[1] A. L. Hodgkin and A. F. Huxley, “A quantitative description of membrane current and its application to conduction and excitation in nerve,” *The Journal of Physiology*, vol. 117, no. 4, pp. 500–544, 1952.

[2] R. FitzHugh, “Impulses and physiological states in theoretical models of nerve membrane,” *Biophysical Journal*, vol. 1, no. 6, pp. 445–466, 1961.

[3] J. Nagumo, S. Arimoto, and S. Yoshizawa, “An active pulse transmission line simulating nerve axon,” *Proceedings of the IRE*, vol. 50, no. 10, pp. 2061–2070, 1962.

[4] H. R. Wilson and J. D. Cowan, “Excitatory and inhibitory interactions in localized populations of model neurons,” *Biophysical Journal*, vol. 12, no. 1, pp. 1–24, 1972.

[5] J. Keener and J. Sneyd, *Mathematical Physiology*, 2nd. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 2009.

[6] M. F. Bear, B. W. Connors, and M. A. Paradiso, *Neuroscience: Exploring the Brain*, 4th. Philadelphia, PA: Wolters Kluwer, 2016.

[7] G. B. Ermentrout and D. H. Terman, *Mathematical Foundations of Neuroscience*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 2010.

[8] C. Koch, *Biophysics of Computation: Information Processing in Single Neurons*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, 2004.

[9] W. Gerstner and W. M. Kistler, *Spiking Neuron Models: Single Neurons, Populations, Plasticity*. New York, NY: Cambridge University Press, 2002.

[10] M. T. Wilson, P. A. Robinson, B. O’Neill, and D. A. Steyn-Ross, “Complementarity of spike- and rate-based dynamics of neural systems,” *PLoS Comput Biol*, vol. 8, no. 6, 2012.

[11] P. Sanz-Leon, S. A. Knock, A. Spiegler, and V. K. Jirsa, “Mathematical framework for large-scale brain network modeling in the virtual brain,” *NeuroImage*, vol. 111, pp. 385–430, 2015.

[12] O. Sporns, “Contributions and challenges for network models in cognitive neuroscience,” *Nature Neuroscience*, vol. 17, pp. 652–660, 2014.

[13] D. A. Pinotsis, P. Robinson, P. Graben, and K. J. Friston, "Neural masses and fields: modelling the dynamics of brain activity," *Frontiers in Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 8, no. 149, 2014.

[14] R. J. Moran, D. A. Pinotsis, and K. J. Friston, "Neural masses and fields in dynamic causal modelling," *Frontiers in Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 7, no. 57, 2013.

[15] P. A. Robinson, C. J. Rennie, D. L. Rowe, S. C. O'Connor, J. J. Wright, E. Gordon, and R. W. Whitehouse, "Neurophysical modeling of brain dynamics," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, vol. 28, S74–S79, 2003.

[16] S. Coombes, P. beim Graben, R. Potthast, and J. Wright, *Neural Fields: Theory and Applications*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 2014.

[17] J. Guckenheimer, "Review: roger temam, infinite-dimensional dynamical systems in mechanics and physics," *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. (N.S.)*, vol. 21, no. 1, pp. 196–198, Jul. 1989.

[18] R. Temam, *Infinite-Dimensional Dynamical Systems in Mechanics and Physics*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 1997.

[19] V. V. Chepyzhov and M. I. Vishik, *Attractors for Equations of Mathematical Physics*. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2002.

[20] J. C. Robinson, *Infinite-Dimensional Dynamical Systems: An Introduction to Dissipative Parabolic PDEs and the Theory of Global Attractors*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press, 2001.

[21] J. K. Hale, *Asymptotic Behavior of Dissipative Systems*. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 1988.

[22] D. T. J. Liley, P. J. Cadusch, and M. P. Dafilis, "A spatially continuous mean field theory of electrocortical dynamics," *Network: Comput. Neural Syst.*, vol. 13, pp. 67–113, 2002.

[23] I. Bojak, D. T. J. Liley, P. Cadusch, and K. Cheng, "Electrorhythmogenesis and anaesthesia in a physiological mean field theory," *Neurocomputing*, vol. 58–60, pp. 1197–1202, 2004.

[24] I. Bojak and D. T. J. Liley, "Self-organized 40 hz synchronization in a physiological theory of EEG," *Neurocomputing*, vol. 70, no. 10–12, pp. 2085–2090, 2007.

[25] D. T. J. Liley and M. Walsh, “The mesoscopic modelling of burst suppression during anaesthesia,” *Frontiers in Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 7, no. 46, 2013.

[26] I. Bojak, Z. V. Stoyanov, and D. Liley, “Emergence of spatially heterogeneous burst suppression in a neural field model of electrocortical activity,” *Frontiers in Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 9, no. 18, 2015.

[27] M. L. Steyn-Ross, D. A. Steyn-Ross, and J. W. Sleigh, “Modelling general anaesthesia as a first-order phase transition in the cortex,” *Progress in Biophysics and Molecular Biology*, vol. 85, no. 2–3, pp. 369–385, 2004.

[28] I. Bojak, H. C. Day, and D. T. J. Liley, “Ketamine, propofol and the EEG: A neural field analysis of HCN1-mediated interactions,” *Frontiers in Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 7, no. 22, 2013.

[29] B. L. Foster, I. Bojak, and D. T. J Liley, “Population based models of cortical drug response: insights from anaesthesia,” *Cognitive Neurodynamics*, vol. 2, no. 4, pp. 283–296, 2008.

[30] D. T. J. Liley and I. Bojak, “Understanding the transition to seizure by modeling the epileptiform activity of general anesthetic agents,” *Journal of Clinical Neurophysiology*, vol. 22, no. 5, pp. 300–313, 2005.

[31] M. A. Kramer, W. Truccolo, U. T. Eden, K. Q. Lepage, L. R. Hochberg, E. N. Eskandar, J. R. Madsen, J. W. Lee, A. Maheshwari, E. Halgren, C. J. Chu, and S. S. Cash, “Human seizures self-terminate across spatial scales via a critical transition,” *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, vol. 109, no. 51, pp. 21 116–21 121, 2012.

[32] M. A. Kramer, H. E. Kirsch, and A. J. Szeri, “Pathological pattern formation and cortical propagation of epileptic seizures,” *Journal of the Royal Society Interface*, vol. 2, pp. 113–127, 2 2005.

[33] M. A. Kramer, A. J. Szeri, J. W. Sleigh, and H. E. Kirsch, “Mechanisms of seizure propagation in a cortical model,” *Journal of Computational Neuroscience*, vol. 22, no. 1, pp. 63–80, 2006.

[34] K. R. Green and L. van Veen, “Open-source tools for dynamical analysis of Liley’s mean-field cortex model,” *Journal of Computational Science*, vol. 5, no. 3, pp. 507–516, 2014.

[35] F. Frascoli, M. P. Dafilis, L. van Veen, I. Bojak, and D. T. J. Liley, “Dynamical complexity in a mean-field model of human EEG,” *Proc. SPIE*, vol. 7270, pp. 72700V–72700V–10, 2008.

[36] F. Frascoli, L. van Veen, I. Bojak, and D. T. J. Liley, "Metabifurcation analysis of a mean field model of the cortex," *Physica D: Nonlinear Phenomena*, vol. 240, no. 11, pp. 949–962, 2011.

[37] M. P. Dafilis, D. T. J. Liley, and P. J. Cadusch, "Robust chaos in a model of the electroencephalogram: implications for brain dynamics," *Chaos*, vol. 11, no. 3, pp. 474–478, 2001.

[38] M. P. Dafilis, F. Frascoli, P. J. Cadusch, and D. T. J. Liley, "Four dimensional chaos and intermittency in a mesoscopic model of the electroencephalogram," *Chaos*, vol. 23, no. 2, 023111, 2013.

[39] ——, "Extensive four-dimensional chaos in a mesoscopic model of the electroencephalogram," *The Journal of Mathematical Neuroscience*, vol. 5, no. 1, 2015.

[40] L. van Veen and K. R. Green, "Periodic solutions to a mean-field model for electrocortical activity," *The European Physical Journal Special Topics*, vol. 223, no. 13, pp. 2979–2988, 2014.

[41] L. van Veen and D. T. J. Liley, "Chaos via Shilnikov's saddle-node bifurcation in a theory of the electroencephalogram," *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, vol. 97, p. 208 101, 20 2006.

[42] P. G. Ciarlet, *Linear and Nonlinear Functional Analysis with Applications*. Philadelphia, PA: Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics, 2013.

[43] L. C. Evans, *Partial Differential Equations*, 2nd. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2010.

[44] E. R. Kandel, J. H. Schwartz, T. M. Jessell, S. A. Siegelbaum, and A. J. Hudspeth, *Principles of Neural Science*, 5th. New York, NY: McGraw-Hill, 2013.

[45] V. B. Mountcastle, "The columnar organization of the neocortex," *Brain*, vol. 120, pp. 701–722, 4 1997.

[46] J. C. Horton and D. L. Adams, "The cortical column: a structure without a function," *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. Bio. Sci.*, vol. 360, no. 1456, pp. 837–862, 2005.

[47] I. Bojak and D. T. J. Liley, "Modeling the effects of anesthesia on the electroencephalogram," *Phys. Rev. E*, vol. 71, p. 041 902, 4 2005.

[48] G. R. Sell and Y. You, *Dynamics of Evolutionary Equations*. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 2002.

[49] M. Marion, "Finite-dimensional attractors associated with partly dissipative reaction-diffusion systems," *SIAM Journal on Mathematical Analysis*, vol. 20, no. 4, pp. 816–844, 1989.

[50] G. B. Folland, *Real Analysis: Modern Techniques and Their Applications*, 2nd. New York, NY: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 1999.

[51] M. E. Taylor, *Partial Differential Equations I: Basic Theory*, 2nd. New York, NY: Springer-Verlag, 2011.

[52] K. H. W. Küfner, "Invariant regions for quasilinear reaction-diffusion systems and applications to a two population model," *NoDEA Nonlinear Differential Equations and Appl.*, vol. 3, no. 4, pp. 421–444, 1996.

[53] K. Chueh, C. Conley, and J. Smoller, "Positively invariant regions for systems of nonlinear diffusion equations," *Indiana Univ. Math. J.*, vol. 26, pp. 373–392, 2 1977.

[54] Q. Ma, S. Wang, and C. Zhong, "Necessary and sufficient conditions for the existence of global attractors for semigroups and applications," *Indiana Univ. Math. J.*, vol. 51, pp. 1541–1559, 6 2002.

[55] Y. You, "Global dynamics of the Brusselator equations," *Dynamics of Partial Differential Equations*, vol. 4, pp. 167–196, 2 2007.

[56] M. Efendiev, *Attractors for Degenerate Parabolic Type Equations*. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society, 2013.

[57] G. Buzsáki, *Rhythms of the Brain*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press, 2006.

[58] A. Dhooge, W. Govaerts, Y. A. Kuznetsov, H. G. E. Meijer, and B. Sautois, "New features of the software matcont for bifurcation analysis of dynamical systems," *Math. Comput. Model. Dyn. Syst.*, vol. 14, no. 2, pp. 147–175, 2008.

VITA

Farshad Shirani was born in Tehran, Iran, and received his bachelor's and master's degrees in Electrical Engineering from the University of Tehran in 2005 and 2007, respectively. From 2007 to 2012, he was working as an instructor and research engineer at the School of Electrical and Computer Engineering at the University of Tehran. In 2013, he joined Georgia Institute of Technology, where he received his master's degree in Aerospace Engineering in 2016, and his master's degree in Mathematics in 2017.

Farshad Shirani's current research interest lies broadly in mathematical neuroscience, mathematical biology, and mathematical sociology. Specifically, he is interested in using finite- and infinite-dimensional dynamical systems theory and theory of partial differential equations to analyze, predict, and control the dynamic behavior of complex neuronal, biological, and social systems.